



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

· A · NEW ·
· BEGINNERS' · LATIN · BOOK ·



IN MEMORIAM

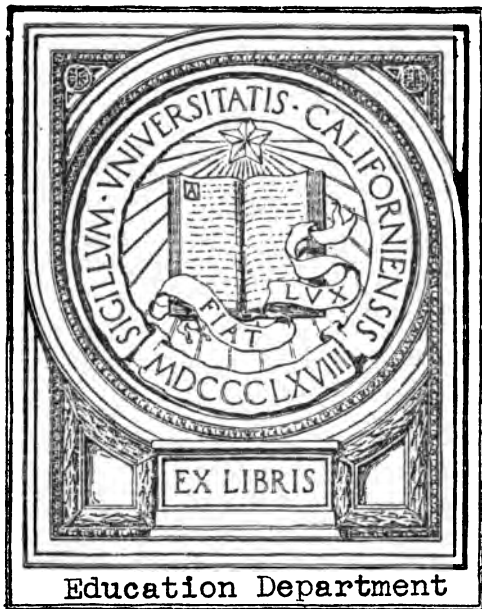
A. F. Lange

766

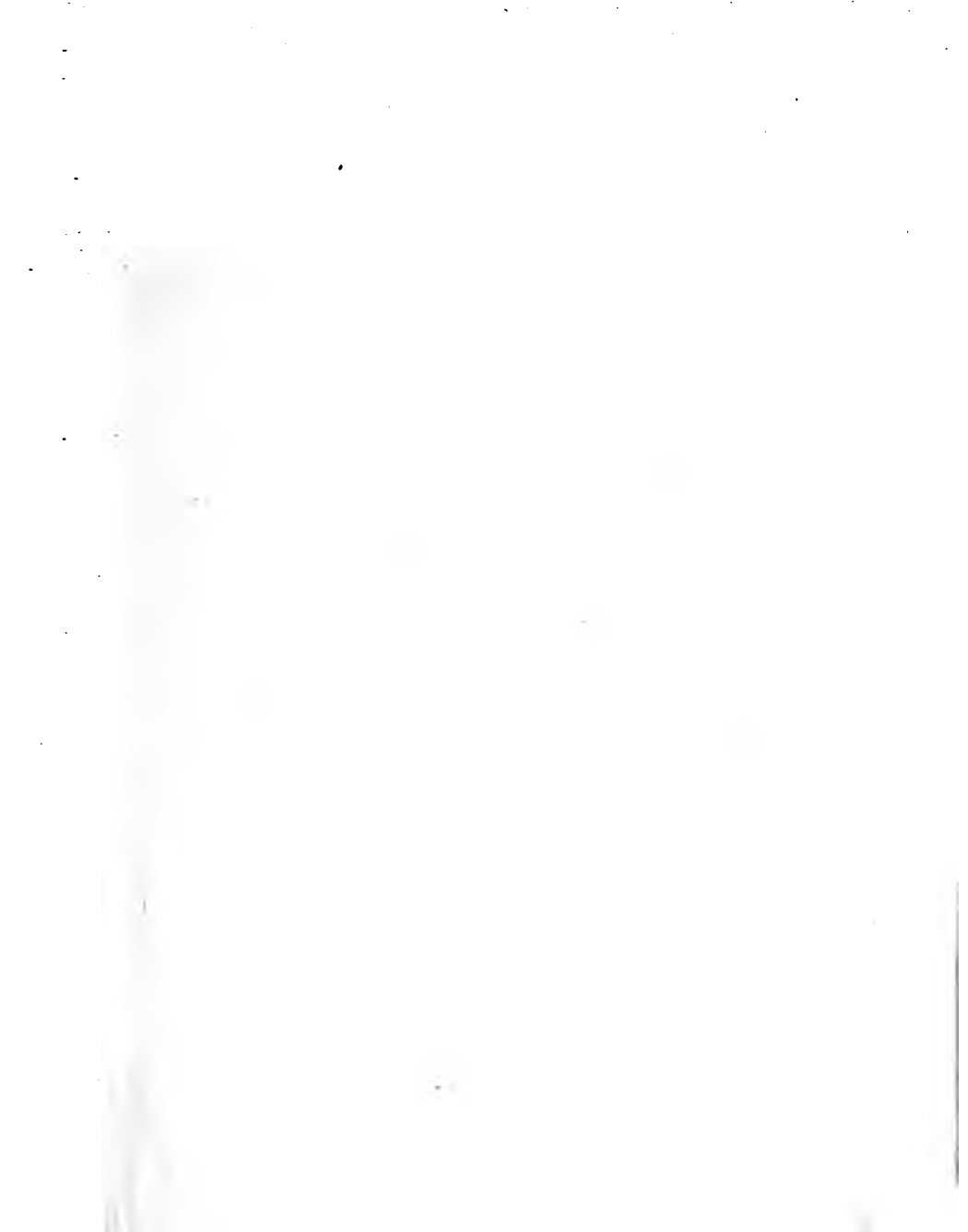
D

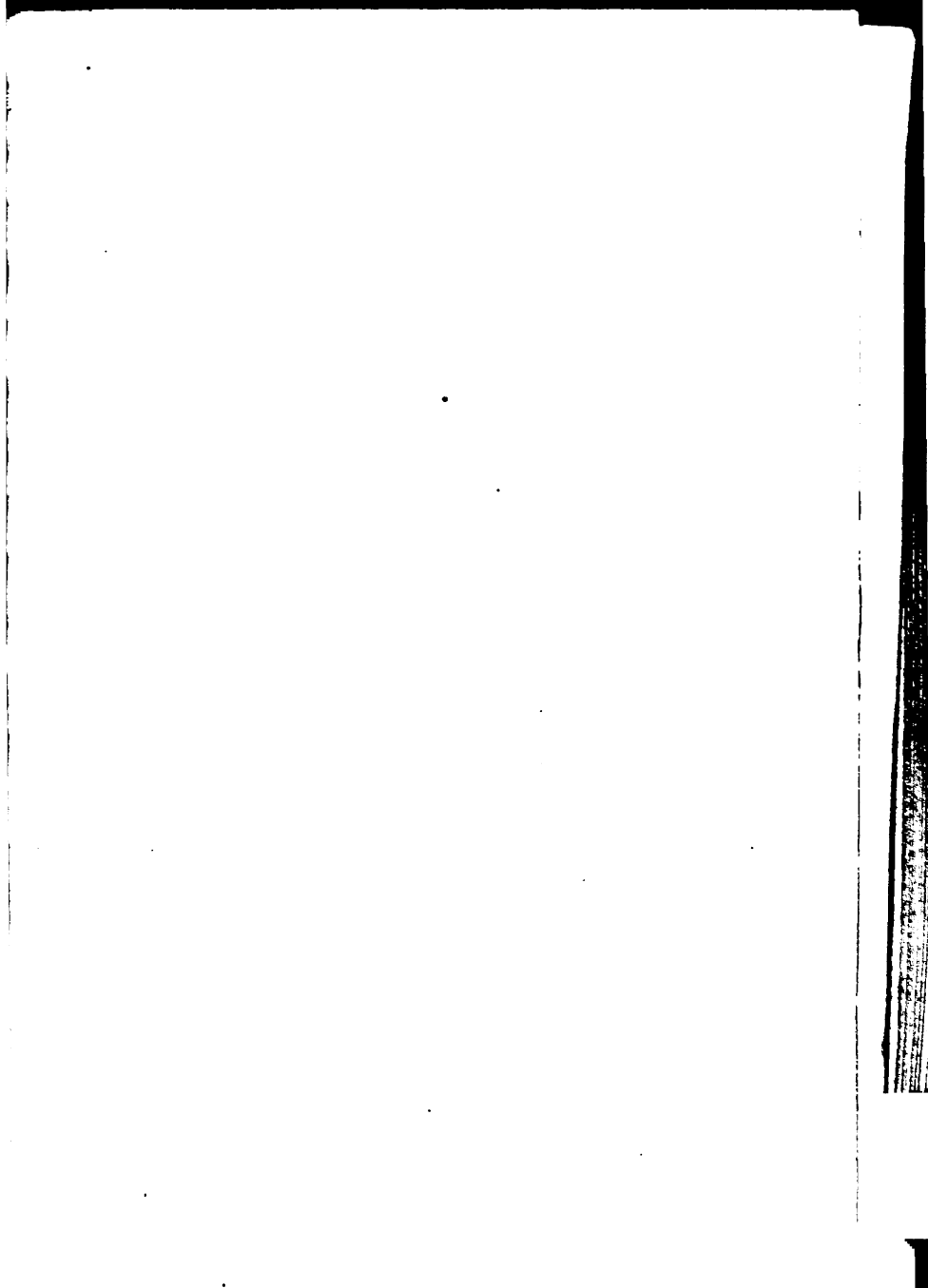
N

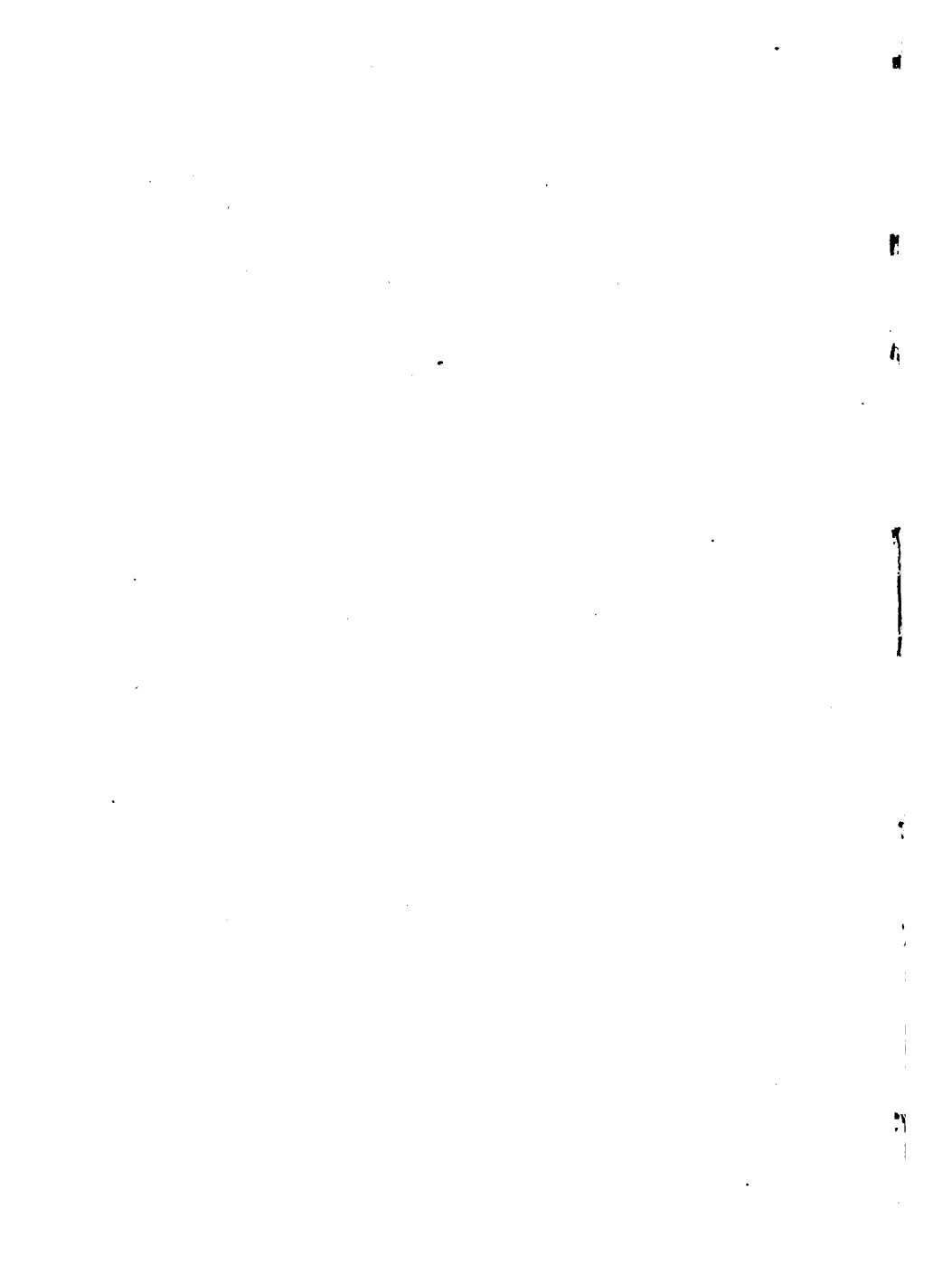
No. //



Education Department







UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

A NEW

BEGINNERS' LATIN BOOK

BY

J. C. HOCH, PH.D., AND O. F. H. BERT, B.S.

INSTRUCTORS IN GREEK AND LATIN
IN GREENSBURG SEMINARY
PENNSYLVANIA

COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY HINDS & NOBLE

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4 COOPER INSTITUTE

NEW YORK CITY

TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

Prof A. F. Lange
to Educational Dept

PREFACE.

IN adding a new book to the large number of methods for teaching Latin to beginners, the authors feel that in many respects they have improved upon the text-books already in use.

Exceptions to rules have, for the most part, been purposely omitted, since the aim is to teach the essentials of the language; the more particular points can best be acquired in connection with the reading of the classics which will follow. Many of the sentences are original, while those of more complex construction have been taken from classic authors; all have been chosen with the aim to interest the student, as well as to illustrate the rules of syntax.

The words which make up the vocabulary are such as will prove to be of value in later study. Five review lessons in vocabulary have been introduced.

The treatment of the subjunctive mode has been withheld until after the indicative of the four conjugations has been learned. The uses of the subjunctive are introduced in eminently logical order. The discussion of conditional sentences by means of a diagram is a new feature. The treatment of the non-finite verb forms is at once most economical and clear.

The question of the quantity of vowels has received very careful attention, and the best of authorities have been consulted and compared. The usage which, on the whole, has seemed nearest the original usage has been adopted in every case.

The fables and other stories which are commonly found in other beginners' Latin books are here omitted, since ample material for reading is supplied in the text.

J. C. HOCH.

O. F. H. BERT.

GREENSBURG, PA.,

January 10, 1901.

CONTENTS.

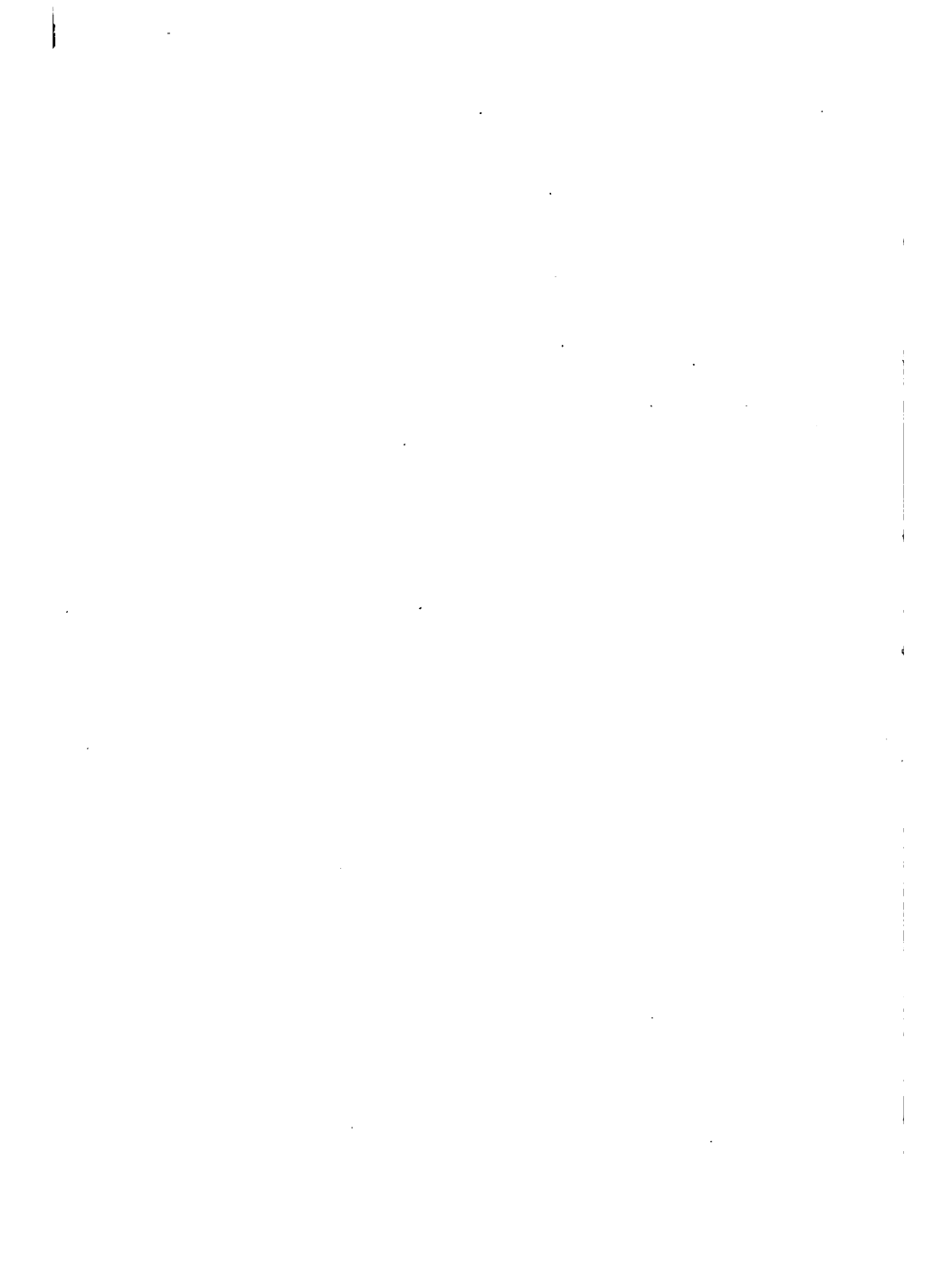
LESSON	PAGE
I. The Alphabet	1
II. Syllables — Accent	3
III. Pronunciation	5
IV. Parts of Speech and Inflection	6
V. The First Declension	8
VI. Agreement of Adjectives	10
VII. Indirect Object	11
VIII. Interrogative Sentences	13
IX. Genitive Case (Possessive)	14
X. Apposition	16
XI. Verb <i>Sum</i>	18
XII. The Second Declension	20
XIII. Adjectives of the First and the Second Declension	22
XIV. The Second Declension (<i>continued</i>)	25
XV. Adjectives of the First and the Second Declension (<i>continued</i>)	27
XVI. Review in Vocabulary	29
XVII. The First Conjugation	31
XVIII. The Verb <i>Sum</i> (<i>continued</i>)	34
XIX. The Demonstratives	36
XX. The Demonstrative <i>is</i>	38
XXI. The Relative and the Interrogative	40
XXII. The Passive Voice	43
XXIII. Ablatives of Means or Instrument and Manner	46
XXIV. The Third Declension	48

LESSON	PAGE
XXV. The Third Declension (<i>continued</i>)	50
XXVI. The Third Declension (<i>continued</i>)	52
XXVII. The Third Declension (<i>continued</i>)	54
XXVIII. The Ablative of Time	56
XXIX. The Third Declension (<i>continued</i>)	58
XXX. Genitives and Ablatives	60
XXXI. The Ablatives of Specification and Cause	63
XXXII. Review in Vocabulary	65
XXXIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension	67
XXXIV. Adjectives of the Third Declension (<i>continued</i>) . .	69
XXXV. The Accusative of Time and Space	71
XXXVI. The Second Conjugation	73
XXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives	75
XXXVIII. The Use of the Comparative	77
XXXIX. The Use of the Superlative	79
XL. Comparison of Adjectives (<i>continued</i>)	81
XLI. Comparison of Adjectives (<i>continued</i>)	83
XLII. The Ablative of Degree of Difference	85
XLIII. Formation of Adverbs	87
XLIV. Comparison of Adverbs	89
XLV. The Fourth Declension	91
XLVI. The Fifth Declension	93
XLVII. Personal Pronouns	95
XLVIII. Review in Vocabulary	97
XLIX. Possessive Adjectives	99
L. Locative Case	101
LI. Constructions of Place	103
LII. The Demonstratives, <i>iste, ipse, idem</i>	105
LIII. The Indefinite Pronouns	108
LIV. Pronominal Adjectives	110
LV. Cardinal Numerals	112

CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
LVI. Ordinal Numerals	114
LVII. Two Uses of the Dative	116
LVIII. The Third Conjugation	118
LIX. The Third Conjugation (<i>continued</i>)	120
LX. The Fourth Conjugation	123
LXI. The Dative with Verbs	125
LXII. Deponent Verbs	127
LXIII. Dative with Compounds	130
LXIV. Review in Vocabulary	132
LXV. Imperative Mode and Participles	134
LXVI. The Ablative Absolute	137
LXVII. Uses of the Infinitive	139
LXVIII. <i>Possum</i> with the Infinitive	142
LXIX. Indirect Discourse	144
LXX. The Subjunctive Mode—Sequence of Tenses	147
LXXI. Purpose and Result Clauses with <i>ut</i>	149
LXXII. Subjunctive in Relative Clauses	153
LXXIII. <i>Cum</i> Clauses	156
LXXIV. The Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing	159
LXXV. Indirect Questions	162
LXXVI. The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences	164
LXXVII. Conditional Sentences	168
LXXVIII. Conditional Sentences (<i>continued</i>)	170
LXXIX. Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine	172
LXXX. The Periphrastic Conjugation	175
LXXXI. Review in Vocabulary	177
TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION	179
VOCABULARIES	213



A NEW BEGINNERS' LATIN BOOK.



LESSON I.

The Alphabet.

1. The English alphabet is in reality the Latin alphabet. Originally the Latin alphabet contained only twenty-three letters. The **v** served for the consonant **w** and the vowel **u**, but finally a separate letter **u** was added; the **i** served for the vowel **i** and also the consonant **j**; consequently the Latin alphabet consists of twenty-four letters.

2. Naturally the letters of the alphabet divide themselves into two groups, vowels and consonants, as follows:—

Vowels: **a, e, i, o, u, y.**

Consonants: **b, c, d, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.**

The consonants are divided into mutes, liquids, spirants, and double consonants.

The mutes are . . .	{	labials: p, b.
		linguals: t, d.
		palatals: c, k, g, q.
The liquids are		l, m, n, r.
The spirants are		f, h, s.
The double consonants are . .		x, z.

3. Pronunciation.—*a.* The vowels are sounded as follows:—

ā (long)	like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .	ǣ (short)	like <i>a</i> in <i>comma</i> .
ē	“ like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> .	ĕ	“ like <i>e</i> in <i>met</i> .
ī	“ like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .	ĭ	“ like <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
ō	“ like <i>o</i> in <i>tone</i> .	ĕ	“ like <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> .
ū	“ like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> .	û	“ like <i>u</i> in <i>put</i> .

y between **u** and **i** (German **ü**).

b. The consonants are sounded like the English, with the following exceptions:—

c like *c* in *cord*. **s** like *s* in *so*.
g like *g* in *go*. **v** like *w* in *went*.
f like *y* in *yes*. **h** is a mere breathing.

c. Diphthongs.—A diphthong is a union of two vowels sounded as one. There are six such combinations, as follows :—

æ like *i* in *mile*. ei like *a* in *ate*.
au like *ow* in *cow*. eu like *u* in *acute*.
oe like *oy* in *boy*. ui like *we* in *weak*.

Diphthongs are always long.

d. Combined Consonants.—In a few cases two consonants are combined and sounded as one, as follows:—

bs like *ps* in *lips*. **th** like *t* in *tin*.
ch like *c* in *cord*. **ph** like *f* in *find*.

e. Double Consonants.

z like *cks* in *bricks*. **z** like *ds* in *lads*.

LESSON II.

Syllables—Accent.

4. Syllables.—The number of syllables in a word is determined by the number of vowels and diphthongs. There are no silent letters in Latin. Each syllable must contain one vowel or diphthong, and only one.

a. A consonant between two vowels belongs to the following syllable. Repeated consonants are always separated. Several consonants between two vowels are joined to the following vowel if together they can be used to begin a Latin word; but in compounds the component parts are separated.

b. Only three syllables of any word have particular names, viz.: the last syllable is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before that, the *antepenult*.

5. Quantity.—Vowels are either long (—) or short (˘).

a. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *galea*, *a helmet*; *trahō*, *I draw*. There are a few exceptions to this rule.

b. A vowel before *nd* and *nt* is short: *mandō*, *I order*; *amentia*, *madness*.

c. A vowel formed by contraction is long: *nīl* (*nihil*), *nothing*.

d. A vowel before *i* consonant, *nf*, *ns*, *gm*, *gn*, is long: *pēior*, *worse*; *īnfimus*, *lowest*; *mēnsa*, *table*; *āgmen*, *line of battle*; *īgnis*, *fire*.

TO THE BEGINNERS' LATIN BOOK

e. Diphthongs are long : *laudo, I praise ; caelum, sky.*

f. A syllable is long if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel ; it is short by nature if it contains a short vowel : *cae-dō, I kill ; in-fē-rī-ŏr.*

g. A syllable is long by position if its vowel is followed by a double consonant or by two consonants except a mute followed by l or r : *nox, night ; culpa, blame.*

6. Accent.

a. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult : *Rō'-ma, Rome.*

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long ; if the penult is short, the accent falls on the antepenult : *a-mī'-cus, friend ; a-mī-cī'-ti-a, friendship.*

NOTE. — The ultima is never accented, nor does the accent ever go forward farther than the antepenult.

c. When an enclitic is joined to a word, it draws the accent upon the last syllable of the original word : *puerī'-que = et puerī, and children.*



Calcar.

LESSON III.

Pronunciation.

7. Exercise. — Pronounce carefully the following words:—

pāx	fās	crās	pars
clam	iam	pēs	rēx
sē	per	nec	ex
sic	quīn	hīc	is
vir	nix	quō	nōs
cor	dō	tot	nox
dux	iūs	lūx	cūr
prae	dum	nunc	haec
foedus	aut	laus	poena
cuicumque	deinde	ēheu	neuter
circiter	barbarus	brevitās	Cicerō
iuvenis	gallīna	gīgās	iūdex
trīstitia	Iūlius	sapiēns	prūdēns
vīvus	turpitūdō	thēsaurus	trānsversus
phalanx	vectīgālis	vectīgal	vel
elephantus	pharetra	philosophus	philosophia
chelydrus	elephās	chorus	chlamys
urbs	Charybdis	concha	conchis
Zama	plēbs	humerus	hūius
aedificat	gladius	rēgīna	niger
discipulus	patria	pecūnia	modestus

NOTE. — The words have been arranged in columns for the pupils' convenience — the simplest monosyllables appearing at the beginning of each column.

CAUTION. — Observe carefully the rules for quantity of syllables and accent as given in Lesson II.

LESSON IV.

Parts of Speech and Inflection.

8. The parts of speech are as follows : noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

Inflection is the process of changing the form of a word to show its grammatical relations.

The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

The other parts of speech are not inflected, and are called *particles*.

a. Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are inflected to show differences in gender, number, and case.

b. The verb is inflected to show differences in voice, mode, tense, person, and number.

c. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs is not strictly considered inflection, but is rather the derivation of new stems to express different degrees.

9. Declension.—a. In Latin, declined words have six cases : Nominative, Genitivē, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

b. Gender.—There are three genders in Latin : Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

GENERAL RULES.—*Names of males, rivers, months, winds, mountains, and, in general, the names of things characterized by strength and size, are masculine.*

Names of females, countries, cities, islands, trees, plants, and, in general, things characterized by beauty and tenderness, are feminine.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter.

c. Number.—There are two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

10. Conjugation.—*a. Voice.*—The Latin has two voices, the Active and the Passive, to show whether the subject is acting upon an object, or is acted upon.

b. Mode.—There are three modes of the finite verb : Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, besides other forms of the verb : Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine, to be explained later.

c. Tense.—There are six tenses : Present, Imperfect, and Future, called tenses of continued action, and Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, called tenses of completed action.

d. Person and Number.—Each tense is inflected through two numbers, Singular and Plural, and three persons, First, Second, and Third, the number and person of the verb depending upon the subject.

e. Principal Parts.—The principal parts of a Latin verb are the first person singular present indicative active, the present infinitive active, the first person singular perfect indicative active, and the perfect passive participle. They are so called because all parts of the verb may be formed from them.

LESSON V.

The First Declension.

11. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular and the final letter of the stem.

That part of the noun to which significant suffixes called case terminations are attached is called the stem.

12. The first declension is called the *a* declension.

nauta, m., *sailor*; stem, *nauta*; base, *naut-*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>naut-a</i> , a sailor.	<i>naut-ae</i> .
G.	<i>naut-ae</i> , of a sailor.	<i>naut-ārum</i> .
D.	<i>naut-ae</i> , to or for a sailor.	<i>naut-īs</i> .
A.	<i>naut-am</i> , a sailor. (obj.)	<i>naut-ās</i> .
V.	<i>naut-a</i> , O sailor.	<i>naut-ae</i> .
A.	<i>naut-ā</i> , with, by, from a sailor.	<i>naut-īs</i> .

13. Observe that, in the above paradigm, the hyphen is used not to divide the word into syllables, but to separate the case endings from the base.

CAUTION. — Pay particular attention to the diphthongs and the long and short vowels.

14. RULES. — a. *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative Case.*

b. *The object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative Case.*

c. *The predicate noun agrees with the subject in Case.*

EXAMPLES. — *Eurōpa est terra. Europe is a country.*

Aqua dēlectat agricolās. Water delights the farmers.

15.

Vocabulary.

Asia, -ae, f., <i>Asia</i> .	fēmina, -ae, f., <i>woman</i> .
terra, -ae, f., <i>land or country</i> .	rēgīna, -ae, f., <i>queen</i> .
Eurōpa, -ae, f., <i>Europe</i> .	aqua, -ae, f., <i>water</i> .
Britannia, -ae, f., <i>Britain</i> .	puella, -ae, f., <i>girl</i> .
īnsula, -ae, f., <i>island</i> .	silva, -ae, f., <i>forest</i> .
Minerva, -ae, f., <i>Minerva</i> .	aquila, -ae, f., <i>eagle</i> .
Diāna, -ae, f., <i>Diana</i> .	bēstia, -ae, f., <i>animal</i> .
dea, -ae, f., <i>goddess</i> .	columba, -ae, f., <i>dove</i> .
agricola, -ae, m., <i>farmer</i> .	incola, -ae, m., <i>inhabitant</i> .
est, (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>is</i> .	amat, (<i>he</i>) <i>loves</i> .
sunt, (<i>they</i>) <i>are</i> .	amant, (<i>they</i>) <i>love</i> .
dēlectat, (<i>he</i>) <i>delights</i> .	laudat, (<i>he</i>) <i>praises</i> .
dēlectant, (<i>they</i>) <i>delight</i> .	laudent, (<i>they</i>) <i>praise</i> .

et, and.

NOTE. — There are no equivalents for the English articles *a*, *an*, and *the*.

16.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Asia est terra. 2. Eurōpa et Asia sunt terrae.
3. Britannia est īnsula. 4. Diāna est dea. 5. Et Minerva est dea. 6. Diāna et Minerva sunt deae. 7. Diāna Minervam amat. 8. Minerva Britanniam amat. 9. Diāna et Minerva terrās amant. 10. Deae agricolam laudent.

II. 1. The queen loves the farmers. 2. The woman loves the girl. 3. The farmer loves the animals. 4. The forest delights the goddesses. 5. The girl loves Diana. 6. Britain is an island and a country. 7. The eagle loves the forest. 8. The dove delights the girl. 9. The girls and the queen praise the farmers. 10. The women praise Minerva.

LESSON VI.

17. RULE. — *Adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.*

NOTE. — Review paragraph 3 and strictly apply the rules on pronunciation.

18.*Vocabulary.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

fābula, -ae, f., *story*.

patria, -ae, f., *native land*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

pirāta, -ae, m., *pirate*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

Victōria, -ae, f., *Victoria*.

māgna, f., *large*.

bona, f., *good*.

mala, f., *bad*.

parva, f., *small*.

alba, f., *white*.

longa, f., *long*.

nārrat, (he) *tells*.

nārrant, (they) *tell*.

sed, *but*.

19.*Exercises in Translation.*

- I. 1. Agricola vītam amat. 2. Poēta fābulam nārrat.
 3. Eurōpa est māgna terra. 4. Britannia est māgna īnsula.
 5. Nauta nōn est pirāta. 6. Rēgīna bonās fēminās laudat.
 7. Graecia est longa terra. 8. Victōria est parva puella.
 9. Agricola et nautae bonās fābulās nārrant.
 10. Graecia est bona patria. 11. Minerva est dea, sed nōn est rēgīna.
 12. Incolae Asiam amant.

- II. 1. The woman tells a long story. 2. Britain is a large island.
 3. The stories delight the good girls. 4. The farmers love the native land.
 5. The farmer praises the

forests. 6. Minerva and Diana are good goddesses. 7. Europe and Asia are large countries. 8. Long life is good. 9. The poet praises the farmer. 10. The small eagle delights the good girl. 11. The inhabitants love and praise the good queen. 12. The good woman praises the farmer.



LESSON VII.

Indirect Object.

20. RULE.— *The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used with verbs of giving, and others whose meaning permits.*

EXAMPLE.— *Agricola puellae rosam dat.*

The farmer gives a rose to the girl.

NOTE.— Review paragraph 6.

21.*Vocabulary.*

rosa, -ae, f., *rose*.

grātia, -ae, f., *gratitude*.

victōria, -ae, f., *victory*.

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

hasta, -ae, f., *spear*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

in, prep. (with abl.), *in, on*.

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*.

pūgna, -ae, f., *battle*.

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.

laetitia, -ae, f., *joy*.

ignāvia, -ae, f., *laziness*.

dat, (he) *gives*.

dant, (they) *give*.

parat, (he) *prepares*.

parant, (they) *prepare*.

ōnat, (he) *decorates*.

ōnant, (they) *decorate*.

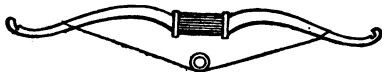
22.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Agricola poëtae fābulam nārrat. 2. Et fābula poëtae laetitiam dat. 3. Puella mēnsam ōrnat. 4. Incolae deae āram parant. 5. Rēgīna nautae hastam dat. 6. Nauta rēgīnae rosam dat. 7. Poëta filiābus* sagittās dat. 8. Incolae bonīs deābus* pecūniam dant. 9. Ītalia, et Gallia, et Germānia sunt in Eurōpā. 10. Rēgīna poētās dēlectat, sed nōn pirātās. 11. Sagittae in mēnsā sunt.

II. 1. The battle delights the pirate. 2. The farmer gives good water to the animals. 3. The good queen is in Britain. 4. The great forest delights the good girls. 5. The goddesses give long life to the sailor. 6. The poet tells the women a good story. 7. Large animals are in the forest. 8. The girls decorate the large altars for the goddesses. 9. The queen praises the victory. 10. And she gives money to the sailor. 11. In Greece are great altars. 12. The poet gives a white rose to the girl.

*NOTE.—The dative and the ablative plural of *fīlia* and *dea* are *filiābus* and *deābus*, respectively, to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of *filius* and *deus*.



Arcus.

LESSON VIII.

Interrogative Sentences.

23. If there is no interrogative word in a sentence, the enclitic¹ **ne** is attached to the most important word, usually the verb, and simply asks for information.

When the answer "yes" is implied, the adverb **nōne** (**nōn + ne**) is used.

When the answer "no" is implied, the adverb **num** is used.

EXAMPLES:—

Amatne agricola pecūniam?

Does the farmer love money?

Nōne agricola pecūniam amat?

Does not the farmer love money?

Num agricola pecūniam amat?

Does the farmer love money?

NOTE.—Review paragraphs 8 and 9.

24.*Vocabulary.*

fossa, -ae, f., ditch.

epistula, -ae, f., letter.

pulchra, f., beautiful.

dē (prep. with abl.), about.

quia (conj.), because.

certē (adv.), certainly.

ubi (adv.), where.

cūr (adv.), why.

num (adv.), expects answer no.

nōne (adv.), expects answer yes.

quis (interrog. pronoun), who.

quid (interrog. pronoun), what.

25. I. 1. Cūr agricola pecūniam amat? 2. Quia pecūnia est bona. 3. Ubi est pulchra rēgīna? 4. Est in

¹ An enclitic is a syllable or a particle added to another word.

Britanniā. 5. Nōne pulchrae silvae incolās dēlectant? Certē. 6. Ubi est Rōma? 7. Estne Rōma in Ītaliā? 8. Quis fābulam in epistulā nārrat? 9. Parva puella fābulam fēminae dē pirātā in epistulā nārrat. 10. Quid puella deābus ōrnat? Ōrnat ārās pulchrās. 11. Num aqua in longā fossā est? 12. Aqua in longā fossā non est.

II. 1. Why is not water in the ditch? 2. Does the farmer love the beautiful woman? 3. Does not the white rose delight the little girl? 4. Who tells the story about the eagle and the dove? 5. The farmer loves the woman because she is good. 6. What does the farmer give to the animals? 7. He gives water to the animals. 8. Where are Italy and Germany? 9. Is the spear small? 10. It is not small; it is large and long. 11. Is not the dove white? 12. Certainly, the dove is white and beautiful.



LESSON IX.

Genitive Case. (Possessive.)

26. The English Possessive is expressed in Latin by means of the Genitive, as is also the object of the preposition *of*.

EXAMPLE:—

Fīlia agricolae poētis fābulam nārrat.

*The daughter of the farmer (the farmer's daughter)
tells the poets a story.*

NOTE.— Review paragraphs 15 and 18.

27.

*Vocabulary.*cōpiaē, -ārum, f. (pl.), *forces*.causa, -ae, f., *cause*.industria, -ae, f., *industry*.gallīna, -ae, f., *hen*.glōria, -ae, f., *glory*.superbia, -ae, f., *pride*.amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom*.saepe (adv.), *often*.Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*.ira, -ae, f., *anger*.corōna, -ae, f., *crown*.rīpa, -ae, f., *bank*.stella, -ae, f., *star*.aurea, f., *golden*.iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice*.servat, (he) *saves*.servant, (they) *save*.

28.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Rēgīna cōpiārum est causa laetitiae. 2. Rosae ārās deārum ōrant. 3. Industria puellae agricolam dēlectat. 4. Filia rēgīnae columbās et gallinās amat. 5. Glōria saepe causa superbiae est. 6. Nōne amīcitia vitam ōrnat? 7. Certē, amīcitia fēmīnārum bonārum incolās terrae dēlectat. 8. Incolae iūstitiam et sapientiam rēgīnae laudant. 9. Ītalia est patria Catilīnae. 10. Num superbia nautārum est causa irae agricolārum?

II. 1. The victories of the forces save the country. 2. Catiline does not love justice and wisdom. 3. The farmer gives a hen, a dove, and an eagle to the good woman's daughter. 4. Who saves the queen's life? 5. Is not friendship good; and is not anger bad? 6. The beautiful star delights the forces of Britain. 7. The golden crown of the queen is beautiful. 8. What is the cause of the battle? 9. Wisdom often saves life. 10. The justice of the queen delights the farmers.

LESSON X.

Apposition.

29. RULE.— *A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in apposition with it, and agrees with it in case.*

EXAMPLES:—

Graecia, mea patria, est parva terra.

Greece, my native land, is a small country.

Agricola rosam parvae puellae, suae filiae, dat.

The farmer gives a rose to the little girl, his daughter.

NOTE.— Review the rules for cases as given in the preceding lessons.

30.

Vocabulary.

iniūria, -ae, f., injury.

lūna, -ae, f., moon.

Iūlia, -ae, f., Julia.

Belga, -ae, m., a Belgian.

mea, f. (poss. adj.), my.

sua, f. (poss. adj.), his, her, their.

memoria, -ae, f., memory.

fera, -ae, f., wild beast.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba.

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.

tua, f. (poss. adj.), your.

nova, f., new.

31.

Exercises in Translation.

- I. 1. Nova lūna Iūliam, rēginam, dēlectat. 2. Ītalia, mea patria, est pulchra terra. 3. Victōria, filia poētae, est pulchra puella. 4. Quis vitam meae filiae, Iūliae, servat? 5. Rēgina fābulam agricolae, incolae Britanniae, nārrat. 6. Suntne ferae in Graeciā, tuā patriā? 7. Agricola,

Britanniae incola, aquam bēstiīs dat. 8. Fēminae bonās puellās, filiās meās, amant. 9. Amīcitia rēginae laetitiam poētīs, incolīs Ītaliae, dat. 10. Memoria vīctōriārū Galbam et Catilinam, incolās Rōmae, dēlectat. 11. Diāna nōn est dea Belgārū, incolārū Eurōpae. 12. Agricola fābulam dē pirātā, incolā Hispāniae, nārrat.

II. 1. The Belgian, a farmer, gives water to the animals. 2. The poet's daughter decorates the altar of the goddess, Minerva. 3. Galba is in Italy, a country of Europe. 4. The goddesses love the Belgians, inhabitants of a country of Europe. 5. Who does not love Greece, his native country? 6. The queen gives roses to the girls, the daughters of the poet. 7. Are there¹ wild beasts in Germany, your native land? 8. The sailor saves the life of your daughter, Julia. 9. The goddess, Diana, is a good goddess. 10. Where is the little daughter of Catiline, the inhabitant of Rome? 11. The beautiful woman is the daughter of Julia, the queen. 12. Does Catiline love the beautiful woman, his daughter?

¹ *There*, the expletive, is not used in Latin.



Nāvis Longa.

LESSON XI.

Verb Sum.

32. In previous lessons, verbs have been used in the present tense, third person only, but at this stage it is necessary for the student to begin to acquire the complete conjugation.

Review paragraph 10, giving particular attention to the use of the tenses.

33. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative of *sum*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fui*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. *sum, I am.*
2. *es, thou art.*
3. *est, he, she, it is.*

PLURAL.

- sumus, we are.*
- estis, you are.*
- sunt, they are.*

IMPERFECT.

1. *eram, I was.*
2. *erās, thou wast.*
3. *erat, he was.*

- erāmus, we were.*
- erātis, you were.*
- erant, they were.*

FUTURE.

1. *erō, I shall be.*
2. *eris, thou wilt be.*
3. *erit, he will be.*

- erimus, we shall be.*
- eritis, you will be.*
- erunt, they will be.*

PERFECT.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. fui, <i>I have been, was.</i> | fuimus, <i>we have been, were.</i> |
| 2. fuisti, <i>thou hast been, wast.</i> | fuistis, <i>you have been, were.</i> |
| 3. fuit, <i>he has been, was.</i> | fuērunt, or } <i>they have been,</i>
fuēre, } <i>were.</i> |

34.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Celta, -ae, m., <i>a Celt.</i> | fuga, -ae, f., <i>flight.</i> |
| prōvincia, -ae, f., <i>province.</i> | rapīna, -ae, f., <i>plundering.</i> |
| nātūra, -ae, f., <i>nature.</i> | audācia, -ae, f., <i>boldness.</i> |
| Iūra, -ae, m., <i>Mt. Jura.</i> | potentia, -ae, f., <i>power.</i> |
| familia, -ae, f., <i>family, household.</i> | in (prep. with acc.), <i>into.</i> |
| Genāva, -ae, f., <i>Geneva.</i> | portat, (<i>he</i>) <i>carries.</i> |
| via, -ae, f., <i>road.</i> | portant, (<i>they</i>) <i>carry.</i> |

35.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Catilina erat in Italiā. 2. Prōvincia Celtārum est in Galliā. 3. Fuēruntne ferae in silvīs Eurōpae? 4. Fui-mus nautae Victōriae rēgīnae. 5. Agricola columbam in silvam portat. 6. Num Italiā fuit patria Belgārum? 7. Iniū-ria incolārum erit causa pūgnae. 8. Māgna familia Galbae fuit in Iūrā. 9. Nātūra pirātārum est mala. 10. Genāva est in Helvētiā, terrā Galliae. 11. Viae prōvinciae sunt longae et bonae.

II. 1. The power and boldness of Diana please the queen. 2. The inhabitants of Rome tell a story about the flight of the Belgians. 3. Galba has been in Gaul, and he carries money into Rome for his family. 4. The joy of the women

about the battle was great, because the victory saves their native land. 5. Was not the road to Mt. Jura long? 6. A beautiful star was in the golden crown of the goddess. 7. Does the poet praise the boldness of the sailors? 8. A spear and an arrow will be on the table. 9. Was the laziness of the forces the cause of the flight? 10. Certainly, laziness and pride have often been the cause of flight. 11. Who gives money to the bad farmer, Galba? 12. Justice delights the inhabitants of a country.

LESSON XII.

Second Declension.

36. Nouns of the second declension end in **us**, **um**, **er**, and **ir**, in the nominative singular. Those ending in **us**, **er**, and **ir**, are masculine; those ending in **um** are neuter. Every neuter noun has the same form for the nominative, accusative, and vocative, ending in **um** in the singular and **a** in the plural.

37. **servus**, *a slave*; stem, **servo**; base, **serv-**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. serv-us , <i>a slave</i> .	serv-i .
G. serv-i , <i>of a slave</i> .	serv-ōrum .
D. serv-ō , <i>to or for a slave</i> .	serv-is .
A. serv-um , <i>a slave (obj.)</i> .	serv-ōs .
V. serv-e , <i>O slave</i> .	serv-i .
A. serv-ō , <i>with, by, from a slave</i> .	serv-is .

oppidum, a town; stem, **oppido**; base, **oppid-**.

SINGULAR.

- N. **oppid-um**, a town.
 G. **oppid-i**, of a town.
 D. **oppid-ō**, to or for a town.
 A. **oppid-um**, a town (obj.).
 V. **oppid-um**, O town.
 A. **oppid-ō**, with, by, from a town.

PLURAL.

- oppid-a**.
oppid-ōrum.
oppid-īs.
oppid-a.
oppid-a.
oppid-īs.

38.

Vocabulary.

bellum , -i, n., war.	equus , -i, m., horse.
scūtum , -i, n., shield.	Bacchus , -i, m., Bacchus.
pōculum , -i, n., cup.	Rhēnus , -i, m., Rhine.
arma , -ōrum, n., (plu.) arms.	gladius , -i, m., sword.
templum , -i, n., temple.	fluvius , -i, m., river.
animus , -i, m., mind.	aurum , -i, n., gold.
deus , -i, m., god.	argentum , -i, n., silver.
dominus , -i, m., master.	discipulus , -i, m., pupil.
amicus , -i, m., friend.	filius , -i, m., son.
dōnat , (he) presents.	aedificat , (he) builds.
dōnant , (they) present.	aedificant , (they) build.

39.

Exercises in Translation.

- I. 1. Rōma est oppidum Ītaliae. 2. Deae templa Graeciae laudant. 3. Equus est bēstia. 4. Serve, ubi est dominus? 5. Dominus est in bellō et arma scūtumque portat. 6. Aurum et argentum animum discipuli dēlectant. 7. Amicī Bacchī deīs et deābus templum aedificant. 8. Filius agricolae pecūniam filiae suae dōnat. 9. Rhēnus

est fluvi^{us} terrae Eur^opae. 10. Amīcī poētae agricolae pōculum, nautae gladium dant. 11. Agricola equis aquam portat. 12. Servī templum Minervae ōrnat.

II. 1. Doves delight the sons and daughters of the farmers. 2. The inhabitants of the island praise Bacchus, the god. 3. Gold and silver adorn women and girls. 4. On the banks of the Rhine are towns. 5. The farmer gives a horse to his son. 6. The women adorn the altars of the gods and goddesses. 7. O, farmer, where is your son? 8. The sailor loves silver and gold. 9. Does not the pirate love money? 10. The slaves do not praise the pride of the master. 11. The good queen gives a sword to the pupil of the poet. 12. Julia is the queen of a large country on the Rhine.

LESSON XIII.

Adjectives of the First and the Second Declension.

40. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus**, masculine; **bona**, feminine; **bonum**, neuter. The masculine is declined like **servus**, the feminine like **nauta**, and the neuter like **bellum**.

CAUTION.—Adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, *not necessarily in form*.

41. bonus nauta, good sailor.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. bonus nauta.	boni nautae.
G. boni nautae.	bonorum nautarum.
D. bono nautae.	bonis nautis.
A. bonum nautam.	bonos nautas.
V. bone nauta.	boni nautae.
A. bono nauta.	bonis nautis.

42. Vocabulary.

praeda, -ae, f., booty.	frumentum, -i, n., grain, corn.
elephantus, -i, m., elephant.	cibus, -i, m., food.
populus, -i, m., people.	peritus, -a, -um, skilful.
murus, -i, m., wall.	Romanus, -a, -um, Roman.
praesidium, -i, n., defense.	clarus, -a, -um, illustrious.
medicus, -i, m., physician.	multus, -a, -um, much, many.
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily.	altus, -a, -um, high.
vinum, -i, n., wine.	validus, -a, -um, strong.
uva, -ae, f., grape.	opulentus, -a, -um, rich.
Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth.	modestus, -a, -um, modest.
	latus, -a, -um, broad.

NOTE. — All adjectives found in the preceding lessons have three terminations.

43. Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Alba columba est praeda aquilae. 2. Peritus agricola audaciam bonorum nautarum laudat. 3. Populus Romanus aquilam Romanam amant,¹ quia aquila victoriam dat. 4. Roma est oppidum clarum. 5. Elephantum sunt

¹ A noun of multitude requires the verb in the plural.

bēstiae māgnae. 6. In Germāniā et Galliā sunt fluvii māgnī et lātī. 7. Altī mūrī sunt praesidium multōrum oppidōrum. 8. Agricola bonus servōs suōs amat. 9. Filia medicī est puella bona et modesta. 10. Oppida clāra et opulenta erant in Siciliā. 11. Filiae tuae, amīce, sunt puellae modestae. 12. Bacchus est deus vinī et ūvārum.

II. 1. Corinth is a rich town of Greece. 2. Grain is the food of horses. 3. The white dove delights the little girl. 4. Many high walls are in the town. 5. Does the good slave love the great pride of his master? 6. He does not love the pride of his master, the rich physician. 7. The grapes of Sicily are good. 8. The strong horses of the farmer carry much grain into the town Corinth. 9. Victoria was a good and famous queen of Britain. 10. A large elephant was the guard of a town in Greece. 11. What is the booty of the queen's good sailors? 12. The large gift delights the good daughter of the illustrious poet.



Eques.

LESSON XIV.

Second Declension (*Continued*).

44. The case terminations of nouns in **er** and **ir** are the same as those of nouns ending in **us**. Most nouns and adjectives in **er** of the second declension are declined like **ager**; that is, they drop the **e** of the nominative.

Nouns in **ius** and **ium** may contract the genitive ending **ii** to **i**: **cōsilium**, gen. **cōsili**, *advice, plan*. **Filius**, *son*, and proper names in **ius** contract **ie** in the vocative to **i**: **fili**; **Mercūri**, *Mercury*. But the place of the accent is not changed.

- 45.** **puer**, m., *boy*; stem, **puero**; base, **puer-**.
ager, m., *field*; stem, **agro**; base, **agr-**.
vir, m., *man*; stem, **viro**; base, **vir-**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
G. puer-ī	puer-ōrum	agr-ī	agr-ōrum	vir-ī	vir-ōrum
D. puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs
A. puer-um	puer-ōs	agr-um	agr-ōs	vir-um	vir-ōs
V. puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
A. puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs

46.*Vocabulary.*

Mercurius , -ī, m., <i>Mercury</i> .	herba , -ae, f., <i>herb, plant</i> .
nūntius , -ī, m., <i>messenger</i> .	hortus , -ī, m., <i>garden</i> .
castrum , -ī, n., <i>tent</i> .	sapientia , -ae, f., <i>wisdom</i> .
castra , -ōrum, n. (plu.), <i>camp</i> .	Rōmānus , -ī, m., <i>a Roman</i> .

magister, -tri, m., *master, teacher*. **benignus**, -a, -um, *kind*.

diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence*.

cōpia, -arum, f. (plu.), *forces*.

gaudium, -i, n., *joy*.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

dōnum, -i, n., *gift*.

47.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Mercurius est nūntius deōrum. 2. Bonī virī sunt praesidium patriae. 3. Castra Rōmānōrum in ripa fluvii erant. 4. Fossae longae sunt praesidium castrōrum. 5. Dōnum rēgīnae bonae puerum modestum dēlectat. 6. Diligentia discipulōrum magistrō gaudium dat. 7. In agris est frūmentum; in silvis et hortis herbae sunt. 8. Sapientia peritōrum medicōrum vitam benīgnae rēgīnae servat. 9. Perītus magister fābulam parvis pueris et bonis puellis nārrat. 10. Altus vir diligentiam fili laudat. 11. Cōpia Rōmānōrum saepe in periculō erant. 12. In templis statuae deōrum et deārum sunt.

II. 1. Famous poets were in Italy and Greece. 2. The inhabitants adorn the new temple of Bacchus. 3. On the bank of the river is an altar of Diana. 4. The poets love and praise the native country of the good men. 5. The fields of the kind farmer are in Italy. 6. The master gives arms to the son of the good man. 7. The wisdom of the good boys was great. 8. Famous and rich towns were in Sicily. 9. In the fields are wide ditches. 10. The poet tells a story to the boy. 11. O son, where is the temple of Bacchus, the god of wine? 12. The poet tells the kind queen the story of Mercury.

LESSON XV.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

(Continued).

48. Adjectives of the first and the second declension with the masculine ending in *er* are declined as follows :—

miser, wretched, poor.

SINGULAR.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>miser</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserum</i>
G.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserī</i>
D.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserō</i>
A.	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
V.	<i>miser</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserum</i>
A.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>

PLURAL.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserā</i>
G.	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
D.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
A.	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>miserā</i>
V.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserā</i>
A.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick (dropping *e* of the nominative masculine).

49.

Vocabulary.

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum,
beautiful.

crēber, -bra, -brum, numer-
ous, frequent.
liber, -era, -erum, free.

tener, -era, -erum, *tender*.

sacer, -ora, -orum, *holy*.

semper (adv.), *always*.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*.

niger, -gra, -grum, *black*.

circum, prep. (with acc.),
around.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*.

liber, -brī, m., *book*.

Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

Vergilius, -ī, m., *Vergil*.

liberī, -ōrum, m., *children of
free parents*.

puerī, -ōrum, m., *general term
for children*.

50.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Piger puer est nōn semper malus. 2. Incolae Āfricae sunt nigri. 3. Magister multōs et pulchrōs librōs suis discipulīs dat. 4. Crēbrae pūgnae in silvā erant. 5. Graeci et Rōmānī fuērunt populī liberī. 6. Cornēlia, pulchra rēgīna, tenerōs liberōs clārī poētae amat. 7. Librōs Vergilī in sacrum templum Mercurī portant. 8. In dextrā rīpā sunt oppida; in sinistrā sunt agrī. 9. Dominus servō miserō longum gladium dat. 10. Liberī incolae altōs mūrōs circum oppidum aedificant.

II. 1. Mercury was a god holy to Greeks and Romans. 2. The friends of Galba give a book to the beautiful daughter of the farmer. 3. Where are the modest children of the poet, the friend of the queen? 4. They are on the bank of the river. 5. Vergil tells numerous stories about the gods and goddesses. 6. Books delight the good pupils. 7. Are the black men in Africa free? 8. Many are free men, but many are slaves. 9. The queen is kind to the sick men of the island. 10. Vergil was not a lazy farmer, but he was a great poet.

LESSON XVI.

Review in Vocabulary.

51. It will be found to be of great advantage for the student to review, at this time, the vocabularies in the preceding lessons.

The following list which contains these words should be studied with great care ; the English equivalents should be learned, and the spelling and the quantity of vowels should be mastered.

52.*Word List.*

aedificat	audācia	clārus	dōnat
aeger	aurea	columba	dōnum
Āfrica	aurum	cōpiaē	elephantus
ager	Bacchus	Corinthus	epistula
agricola	Belga	corōna	equus
alba	bellum	crēber	erāmus
altus	benignus	cūr	erit
amat	bēstia	dat	est
amant	bona	dē	estis
amīcitia	Britannia	dea	et
amīcus	castra	dēlectat	Eurōpa
animus	castrum	dēlectant	fābula
aqua	Catilīna	deus	familia
aquila	causa	dexter	fēmīna
āra	Celta	Diāna	fera
argentum	certē	diligentia	filia
arma	cibus	discipulus	filius
Asia	circum	dominus	fluvius

fossa	laudent	parva	sacer
frumentum	liber	patria	saepe
fuga	liber	pecūnia	sagitta
fuisti	longa	peritus	sapientia
Galba	lūna	piger	scūtum
Gallia	magister	pirāta	sed
gallīna	māgna	pōculum	semper
gaudium	mala	poēta	servat
Genāva	mea	populus	servus
Germānia	medicus	portat	Sicilia
gladius	memoria	potentia	silva
glōria	mēnsa	praeda	sinister
Graecia	Mercurius	praesidium	statua
Graecus	Minerva	prōvincia	stella
grātia	miser	puella	sua
hasta	modestus	puer	sum
herba	multus	puerī	sunt
Hispānia	mūrus	liberī	suum
hortus	nārrat	pūgna	templum
ignāvia	nātūra	pulcher	tener
in	nauta	pulchra	terra
incola	niger	quia	tua
industria	nōn	quid	ubi
īnsula	nōnne	quis	ūva
iniūria	nova	rapīna	validus
īra	num	rēgīna	via
Ītalia	nūntius	Rhēnus	vīctōria
lūlia	oppidum	ripa	vīnum
lūra	opulentus	Rōma	vir
iūstitia	ōrnat	Rōmānus	Vergilius
laetitia	parat	rosa	vīta
laudat			

LESSON XVII.

The First Conjugation.

53. The Latin verb is regularly inflected through four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel preceding the ending -re of the present infinitive active; *ā* in the first conjugation, *ē* in the second, *ē* in the third, and *i* in the fourth.

EXAMPLES. — *amāre*, to love; *monēre*, to advise; *regēre*, to rule; *audire*, to hear.

NOTE. — Let paragraph 10 be thoroughly reviewed.

54. Learn the indicative active of *amāre*.

Principal parts: *amō*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātus*.

INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	
		PLURAL.
1. <i>amō</i> , I love.		<i>amāmus</i> , we love.
2. <i>amās</i> , thou lovest.		<i>amātis</i> , you love.
3. <i>amat</i> , he, she, it loves.		<i>amant</i> , they love.
IMPERFECT.		
1. <i>amābam</i> , I was loving.		<i>amābāmus</i> , we were loving.
2. <i>amābās</i> , thou wast loving.		<i>amābātis</i> , you were loving.
3. <i>amābat</i> , he, she, it was loving.		<i>amābant</i> , they were loving.
FUTURE.		
1. <i>amābō</i> , I shall love.		<i>amābimus</i> , we shall love.
2. <i>amābis</i> , thou wilt love.		<i>amābitis</i> , you will love.
3. <i>amābit</i> , he will love.		<i>amābunt</i> , they will love.

SINGULAR.	PERFECT.	PLURAL.
1. <i>amāvī, I loved, have loved.</i>	<i>amāvimus, we loved.</i>	
2. <i>amāvistī, thou lovedst, hast loved.</i>	<i>amāvistis, you loved.</i>	
3. <i>amāvit, he loved, has loved.</i>	<i>amāverunt, } they loved.</i> <i>amāvere, }</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>amāveram, I had loved.</i>	<i>amāverāmus, we had loved.</i>
2. <i>amāverās, thou hadst loved.</i>	<i>amāverātis, you had loved.</i>
3. <i>amāverat, he had loved.</i>	<i>amāverant, they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. <i>amāverō, I shall have loved.</i>	<i>amāverimus, we shall have loved.</i>
2. <i>amāveris, thou wilt have loved.</i>	<i>amāveritis, you will have loved.</i>
3. <i>amāverit, he will have loved.</i>	<i>amāverint, they will have loved.</i>

55.

Vocabulary.

<i>aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to build.</i>	<i>narrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to tell.</i>
<i>dō, dare, dedi, datus, to give.</i>	<i>ornō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to decorate.</i>
<i>dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to delight.</i>	<i>portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to carry.</i>
<i>dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to present.</i>	<i>parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to prepare.</i>
<i>laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to praise.</i>	<i>servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to save.</i>

NOTE.—The principal parts of every verb must be learned carefully. Observe the irregularities of the verb *dō*.

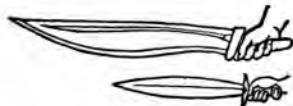
56.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Incolae templum aedificant. 2. Liberī medici fabulam poëtae laudābunt. 3. Pulchrae herbae in hortō agricolae fuērunt. 4. Equī nigrī in oppidum frūmentum portābant. 5. Industria servōrum Galbam, dominum, dēlectāvit. 6. Benigna rēgīna aegris nautis pecūniam dōnāverat. 7. Nōnne filia magistrī gallinam agricolae dedit? 8. Amīcitiam, iūstitiam, sapientiam amāmus. 9. Graeci, laudāvistisne Diānam?

II. 1. The industry and the diligence of the pupils delighted the teacher. 2. The poets will tell stories about the great river Rhine. 3. The war in Germany was long. 4. On the right bank of the river they had built a town; and on the left bank they were building a temple to Mercury. 5. I will carry gold and silver into the temple of Diana. 6. Many¹ good men have loved Italy, their native country. 7. The kind man was giving roses to the poor, sick children of the slaves. 8. Beautiful horses delight the rich man, my friend. 9. The friendship of the modest girls delights the children of Cornelia. 10. The water saved the life of the Greek.

¹ many and good.



LESSON XVIII.

The Verb Sum (*Continued*).

57. Learn the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative of *sum*.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. *fuera*m, *I had been.*
2. *fuera*s, *thou hadst been.*
3. *fuera*t, *he had been.*

PLURAL.

- fuera*mus, *we had been.*
- fuera*tis, *you had been.*
- fuera*nt, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>fuero</i> , <i>I shall have been.</i> | <i>fuerimus</i> , <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. <i>fueris</i> , <i>thou wilt have been.</i> | <i>fueritis</i> , <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. <i>fuerit</i> , <i>he will have been.</i> | <i>fuerint</i> , <i>they will have been.</i> |

58.*Vocabulary.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>morbus</i> , -i, m., <i>disease.</i> | <i>vallum</i> , -i, n., <i>fortification.</i> |
| <i>Persa</i> , -ae, m., <i>a Persian.</i> | <i>aedificium</i> , -i, n., <i>building.</i> |
| <i>Insidiae</i> , -arum, f. (plu.), <i>ambush.</i> | <i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, <i>tired.</i> |
| <i>dolus</i> , -i, m., <i>trickery.</i> | <i>grātus</i> , -a, -um, <i>pleasing.</i> |
| <i>Gallus</i> , -i, m., <i>a Gaul.</i> | <i>pūrus</i> , -a, -um, <i>pure.</i> |
| <i>Germānus</i> , -i, m., <i>a German.</i> | <i>iūstus</i> , -a, -um, <i>just.</i> |
| <i>Poenus</i> , -i, m., <i>a Carthaginian.</i> | <i>historia</i> , -ae, f., <i>history.</i> |
| <i>occupō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to seize.</i> | <i>fugō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to put to flight.</i> |
| <i>pugnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to fight.</i> | <i>vastō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to lay waste.</i> |
| <i>nunc</i> (adv.), <i>now.</i> | <i>cum</i> (prep. with abl.), <i>with.</i> |

59.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Dolus Persarum incolis Graeciae insidiās parat. 2. Ventī pueris morbōs saepe portant. 3. Fossa et vallum sunt praesidium castrōrum. 4. Multa aedificia oppidi fuērunt māgna et alta. 5. Aqua pūra fluvīi erit grāta dēfessis bēstiis. 6. Bella Rōmānōrum nōn semper iūsta fuerant. 7. Graeci et Rōmānī fuērunt populī liberī. 8. Arma Gallōrum et Germānōrum erant gladii et hastae et scūta. 9. Rōmānī cum Poenis pūgnāvēre. 10. Rōmānī Galliam occupāvērunt et Gallōrum agrōs vastāvērunt.

II. 1. Galba, the sailor, put the pirates to flight. 2. I have told the history of the Greeks to the good boys. 3. You have given much money to the daughter of the poet. 4. Sicily and Britain are islands. 5. You were a sailor, now you are a farmer. 6. The Rhine is a beautiful river of Germany. 7. The pirates have seized many islands and many towns of the Gauls. 8. The inhabitants of the island were poor slaves. 9. The victory of the forces was the cause of great joy. 10. We were praising the troops of the Germans.

*Tubae.*

LESSON XIX.

The Demonstratives.

60. The demonstratives *hic* and *ille* are used as pronouns and as adjectives.

hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D.	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
A.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
A.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

ille, that.

N.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
A.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
A.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

NOTES. — *a.* *hic* is applied to what is near the speaker in place, time, or thought, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the first person: *haec puella, this girl.*

b. *ille* is applied to what is relatively remote from the speaker in place, time, or thought, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the third person: *illa fēmina, that woman.*

c. *ille*, agreeing with a noun and commonly placed after it, sometimes means *that well known, that famous.*

d. *hic* and *ille* are sometimes used without a noun, in contrast: *hic, the latter; ille, the former.*

e. The forms of *hic* and *ille* sometimes mean *he, she, it.*

61.

Vocabulary.

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., <i>Cincinnatus</i> .	laetus, -a, -um, <i>glad</i> .
vicīnus, -ī, m., <i>neighbor</i> .	maestus, -a, -um, <i>sad</i> .
oppidānus, -ī, m., <i>townsman</i> .	liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to</i>
arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to plow</i> .	<i>free</i> .
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to call</i> .	celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to</i>
armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to arm</i> .	<i>celebrate</i> .
tum (adv.), <i>then</i> .	prō (prep. with abl.), <i>for</i> .
tūtus, -a, -um, <i>safe</i> .	mox (adv.), <i>soon</i> .

62.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Hi viri sunt Rōmānī ; illi, Germānī. 2. Fluvii et mūrī et fossae sunt praesidiū hōrum castrōrum māgnōrum. 3. Cincinnātus et Vergilius fuērunt clārī Rōmānī ; ille fuit agricola, hīc fuit poēta. 4. Persae prō patriā pūgnāvērunt et oppida vicinōrum vastāvērunt. 5. Hōc aedificium est templum Mercuri ; hīc est nūntius deōrum sacrōrum. 6. Incolae hūius insulae illōs pirātās fugāvērunt. 7. Filia rēgīnae hōs puerōs et illās puellās laudābit. 8. Illud dōnum est pulchrum. 9. Cincinnātus, agricola, agrōs arāvit, tum in multis pūgnis prō patriā pūgnāvit. 10. Poētae multās fābulās dē bellis Poenōrum et Rōmānōrum nārrāvērunt.

II. 1. Now we are boys ; soon we shall be men. 2. The townsmen will call the farmers into the town where they will be safe. 3. The joy of the men was great, and they celebrated the victory of the Roman forces in Britain. 4. I told this story to the daughter of that woman. 5. The girl will not be sad, but she will be glad. 6. Cornelia and

Victoria are good girls ; to the former we will give beautiful books ; to the latter, white roses. 7. These arms have freed the wretched slaves. 8. Britain is a small and famous island. 9. The Romans armed great forces in Sicily. 10. The teacher told the history of the Roman people to these pupils.

LESSON XX.

The Demonstrative *is*.

63. *is, that, this; also he, she, it.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G. <i>īius</i>	<i>īius</i>	<i>īius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
A. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
A. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

NOTES. — *a. is* as a demonstrative adjective is an unemphatic *that* or *this*. On the one hand it approaches *ille*, on the other, but less nearly, *hic*.

b. As a pronoun *is* means *he, she, it*. *īius* may be translated in two ways: *of him, her, it*, or *his, her, its*; *eōrum, eārum, eōrum* may be translated: *of them, or their*.

64.

Vocabulary.

Homērus, -ī, m., Homer.
somnus, -ī, m., sleep.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.

castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to chastise.	contentus, -a, -um, contented.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to defeat, to overcome.	ex or ē (prep. with abl.), out of.
locus, -ī, m., place.	reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bring back, to gain.
fidus, -a, -um, faithful.	

65.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Vir filium suum amat et eum castigat. 2. Rōmānī multās et māgnās victōriās ex Galliā et Britannīā reportāverunt. 3. Vergilius et Homērus fuērunt clārī poētae ; ille fuit Rōmānus, hīc, Graecus. 4. Eōs nautās amāmus, sed īī pirātae sunt malī. 5. Eās puellās vocābimus, et eīs fābulam dē deābus Minervā et Diānā nārrābimus. 6. Ubi illam praedam īī virī reportāverunt ? 7. Is contentus vir amīcīs eīus est grātus. 8. Fēminae deōs laudant, nam eīs benignī sunt. 9. Is locus castrīs idōneus erat. 10. Vir filium suum vocāvit et pecūniam dedit, quia eīus audāciam amāvit.

II. 1. The farmer is sick and tired ; sleep in the garden will be pleasing to him. 2. What did the Romans gain in the great war with these sturdy Germans ? 3. Water is pleasing to this tired messenger ; wine is pleasing to that lazy farmer. 4. These boys and girls are faithful pupils, and we will love and praise them. 5. His friend will give a book to the daughter of that poet. 6. Peace delights these farmers and those townsmen. 7. The gods give good gifts to the men and chastise them. 8. These

skilful sailors will defeat the pirates and put them to flight.
 9. Where are these sons of that famous poet now? They are in Rome.
 10. Rome is a large town and is a suitable place for them.



LESSON XXI.

The Relative and the Interrogative.

66. The relative, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *which*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
A. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
A. <i>quod</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

The interrogative, *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, *who*, *what*, *which*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>quis</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
A. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
A. <i>quod</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

NOTES.—*a.* The meanings cannot be tabulated with reference to gender.

b. Both the relative and the interrogative are used as pronouns and adjectives. But **quod** is always used in place of **quid** as an interrogative adjective, and generally **quī** in place of **quis**.

RULE.—*A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number.*

CAUTION.—The case of a relative, as that of any other substantive, depends upon its use in a clause and not upon the case of the antecedent.

67.

Vocabulary.

Rōmulus , -ī, m., <i>Romulus</i> .	attentus , -a, -um, <i>attentive</i> .
fōrtūna , -ae, f., <i>fortune</i> .	probus , -a, -um, <i>upright</i> ,
cēna , -ae, f., <i>meal</i> .	<i>honest</i> .
beātus , -a, -um, <i>happy</i> .	vulnerō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>
pūgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>	<i>wound</i> .
<i>fight</i> .	iuvō , -āre, iūvī, iūtus, <i>to</i>
expūgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>	<i>help</i> .
<i>take by storm</i> .	vituperō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>
oppūgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>	<i>blame</i> .
<i>besiege</i> .	necō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to kill</i> .

68.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Beātī sunt iī, quī contentī sunt. 2. Cincinnātus iīs inimicīs, quōs in proeliō vulnerāvit, vitam dōnāvit. 3. Pulchrum fuit templum Minervae, quod clārus vir aedificāverat. 4. Bona est fōrtūna eōrum, quōrum puerī sunt iūsti et probī. 5. Rēgīna poētā, Vergiliū, quī populō est grātus, laudat. 6. Bonae puellae servōs, quibus virī pecūniā dedērunt, iuvābunt. 7. Discipulus, quem ma-

gister vituperāvit, nōn attentus fuerat. 8. Quis oppidum, Rōmam, aedificāvit? Rōmulus fuit vir ille. 9. Cui librōs tuōs dōnāvistī, amīce? Filiō mei servī. 10. Quod frūmentum est cibus equōrum?

II. 1. We praise those whose wisdom saved their native country. 2. The inhabitants of the town which we besieged were Romans. 3. The farmer praised the woman who prepared a meal for him. 4. The camp in which the Greeks were, was safe. 5. What peoples of Europe were free? 6. What man did those pirates kill? 7. What did the teacher tell the boys? 8. He told them a story about Romulus, who built Rome. 9. In company with whom¹ shall we decorate the altars of the goddesses? 10. The girls who carry roses will help them.

¹ cum is used as an enclitic with the relative.



Pōns ā Caesare in Rhēnō factus.

LESSON XXII.

The Passive Voice.

69. Transitive verbs of the first conjugation are inflected in the passive voice : —

amāre, to love.

INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. **amor, I am loved.**
2. { **amāris, } thou art loved.**
 { **amāre, }**
3. **amātur, he is loved.**

PLURAL.

- amāmur, we are loved.**
- amāminī, you are loved.**
- amantur, they are loved.**

IMPERFECT.

1. **amābar, I was loved.** **amābāmur, we were loved.**
2. **amābāris, } thou wast** **amābāminī, you were loved.**
 amābāre, } loved.
3. **amābātur, he was loved.** **amābantur, they were loved.**

FUTURE.

1. **amābor, I shall be loved.** **amābimur, we shall be loved.**
2. **amāberis, thou wilt be** **amābimini, you will be loved.**
 loved.
3. **amābitur, he will be loved.** **amābuntur, they will be loved.**

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

- | | | | |
|------|-----------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. { | amātus, -a, -um | { | sum, I have been (was) loved. |
| 2. { | | | es, thou hast been (wast) loved. |
| 3. { | | | est, he has been (was) loved. |

PLURAL.

1.	} amātī, -ae, -a	{ sumus, <i>we were loved.</i>
2.		{ estis, <i>you were loved.</i>
3.		{ sunt, <i>they were loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	} amātus, -a, -um	{ eram, <i>I had been loved.</i>
2.		{ erās, <i>thou hadst been loved.</i>
3.		{ erat, <i>he had been loved.</i>

PLURAL.

1.	} amātī, -ae, -a	{ erāmus, <i>we had been loved.</i>
2.		{ erātis, <i>you had been loved.</i>
3.		{ erant, <i>they had been loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	} amātus, -a, -um	{ erō, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>
2.		{ eris, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i>
3.		{ erit, <i>he will have been loved.</i>

PLURAL.

1.	} amātī, -ae, -a	{ erimus, <i>we shall have been loved.</i>
2.		{ eritis, <i>you will have been loved.</i>
3.		{ erunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

70. RULE. — *The voluntary agent of an action is expressed by ā or ab with the ablative case.*

NOTES. — *a.* Review paragraph 10.

b. **ab** is used before vowels or **h**; **ā** or **ab**, before consonants.

c. Observe the changes in changing the active into the passive. The object of the active becomes the subject of the passive; the subject (that is, the voluntary agent) of the active is expressed with the passive by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

71.

Vocabulary.

proelium, -ī, n., battle.

mātrōna, -ae, f., lady.

ancilla, -ae, f., maidservant.

apud (prep. with acc.), among.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
live, to inhabit.

superbus, -a, -um, proud.

posteā (adv.), afterwards.

sī (conj.), if.

ā or ab (prep. with abl.), by.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
educate.

72.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Graecī Homērum, poētam, quī in Graeciā habitavit, amāverunt. 2. Homērus, poēta, quī in Graeciā habitavit, ā Graecīs amātus est. 3. Bonus vir pecūniam miseris puerīs servōrum suōrum dabit. 4. Pecūnia et cibus miseris puerīs ā virīs bonīs dabuntur. 5. Ubi poēta fābulam dē pūgnā nārravit? 6. In quō oppidō fābula dē proeliō ā Vergiliō, poētā, nārrata est? 7. Hōc templum ā Graecīs nōn aedificātum est, sed Rōmānī id aedificāverunt. 8. In illō proeliō multī et bonī virī vulnerātī sunt, et multī necātī sunt. 9. Ā quibus illī virī necātī sunt? Ā Germānīs. 10. Prōvinciae Galliae ā cōpiīs Rōmānōrum occupātae sunt.

II. 1. The fields were plowed by Cincinnatus, who afterwards fought in many battles. 2. The proud lady chastised the lazy maidservants. 3. Who was chastised by the master? The slave. 4. Have you won the victory, Romans, in the battle with the Belgians? 5. Certainly, we have put them to flight, and have seized their towns. 6. Among the Romans, children were educated by the slaves. 7. The territories of the Gauls were often devastated by the Romans. 8. You will be loved by good men if you are always upright.

LESSON XXIII.

Ablatives of Means or Instrument and Manner.

73. RULES. — *a. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

b. The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative with cum; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the noun.

EXAMPLES: —

a. Ager arātrō ab agricolā arātus est.

The field was plowed with a plow by the farmer.

b. Agricola agrum magnā cum cūrā arat.

The farmer plows the field with great care.

NOTES. — *a.* As in “*magnā cum cūrā*” in example *b* above, the Latin order is adjective, preposition, noun, instead of preposition, adjective, noun, as in English.

b. An English adverb is often the equivalent of an ablative of manner.

74.

Vocabulary.

arātrum, -ī, n., *plow*.

cūra, -ae, f., *care*. [toil.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to

ante (prep. with acc.), *before*.

patientia, -ae, f., *patience*.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to *free*.

mūnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to
reward.

tum (adv.), *then*.

diū (adv.), *for a long time*.

75. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Cum gaudiō clārus vir pecūniam miseris servis dabat. 2. Germānī cum audāciā pūgnāverant, sed vicinī suī armīs superāvērunt. 3. Ante proelium Germānī laetī fuerant, sed Gallī eōs fugāvērunt ; tum maestī erant. 4. Armīs patriam liberāmus. 5. Poēta fābulam puerīs māgnā cum cūrā parat. 6. Bonus vir cum diligentīā et laetitiā dominō labōrat. 7. Et dominus multā pecūniā eum mūnerat. 8. Bonus servus pecūniā ā dominō suō, cui cum diligentīā labōrat, munerābitur. 9. Num puellae rosīs albīs ārās deōrum cum patientīā ōrnābunt? 10. Ārās nōn rosīs, sed argentō et aurō ōrnābunt.

II. 1. By which slaves were the altars of the gods and goddesses decorated with roses? 2. The altars were decorated with roses by the slaves of Cincinnatus, who, with great daring, fought for the Romans in many battles. 3. The Carthaginians fought with the Romans with great boldness. 4. Those boys are not delighted with these books which have been given to them by a friend. 5. The cause of the war was the pride of the Persians, who were afterwards overcome by the Greeks by ambush. 6. The queen wisely rewards the sailors who have put to flight the pirates. 7. With what does the farmer plow the field? 8. He works with a new plow and with black horses. 9. The fields are plowed by the farmer with the new plow which his friend has given him. 10. For a long time we have toiled with patience and diligence.

LESSON XXIV.

The Third Declension.

76. Stems of the third declension end in -i or a consonant. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems* and *liquid stems*. The stem is found by dropping the ending -um of the genitive plural. The base is the same as the stem.

NOTE. — Review paragraph 2.

77. The declension of mute stems is as follows : —

dux, ducis, m., leader ; stem duc-		rēx, rēgis, m., king ; stem rēg-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
G. duc-is	duc-um	rēg-is	rēg-um
D. duc-i	duc-ibus	rēg-i	rēg-ibus
A. duc-em	duc-ēs	rēg-em	rēg-ēs
V. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
A. duc-e	duc-ibus	rēg-e	rēg-ibus

prīnceps, -ipis, m., leader, chief ; stem prīncip-		pēs, pedis, m., foot ; stem ped-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. prīnceps	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
G. prīncip-is	prīncip-um	ped-is	ped-um
D. prīncip-i	prīncip-ibus	ped-i	ped-ibus
A. prīncip-em	prīncip-ēs	ped-em	ped-ēs
V. prīncep-s	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
A. prīncip-e	prīncip-ibus	ped-e	ped-ibus

GENERAL RULE FOR GENDER. — *The endings -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, and the increasing genitives in -es are masculine.*

NOTE. — Any noun which has more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative is said to be increasing in the genitive.

78.

Vocabulary.

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.*

dux, ducis, m., *leader.*

iūdex, -icis, m., *judge.*

artifex, -icis, m., *artisan.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*

pedes, -itis, m., *foot-soldier.*

eques, -itis, m., *cavalry-man.*

prīnceps, -ipis, m., *chief.*

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., *priest.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f., *constancy, perseverance.*

prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*

79.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Militēs Galbae oppidum cum audāciā oppugnāvērunt. 2. Militēs ducem suum amant. 3. Cōnstantia cōpiārum ducibus māgnam laetitiam dat. 4. Iūdex iustus incolis patriae cārus est. 5. Rēx sapientiam iūdicis laudat. 6. In Graeciā multī artificēs fuērunt; Graeciā erat patria multōrum poētārum et artificum. 7. Rēgēs et prīncipēs pulchrōs equōs amant. 8. Bonī militēs patriam amant. 9. Persae erant dominī Asiae. 10. Rēgīna cōpiārum artificibus māgnam laetitiam dabat.

II. 1. Cincinnatus was a great leader of the Roman forces. 2. Many priests were in Greece and in Italy. 3. Romulus was the first king of Rome. 4. The wisdom of the master is known to the slaves. 5. The feet of elephants are broad. 6. Great was the perseverance of the foot-

soldiers of the Greeks and Romans. 7. In Italy are many rivers and small and large towns. 8. Great is the fame of the foot-soldiers and the cavalry-men. 9. Those soldiers who were put to flight were chastised by the leaders. 10. The wisdom of the just judge is praised by the chiefs and soldiers of the Roman people.

LESSON XXV.

The Third Declension (*Continued*).

80. The declension of liquid stems is as follows : —

homō, hominis, m., <i>man</i> ; stem homin-		frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother</i> ; stem frātr-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
G. homin-is	homin-um	frātr-is	frātr-um
D. homin-ī	homin-ibus	frātr-ī	frātr-ibus
A. homin-em	homin-ēs	frātr-em	frātr-ēs
V. homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
A. homin-e	homin-ibus	frātr-e	frātr-ibus

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., <i>consul</i> ; stem cōnsul-		scriptor, scriptōris, m., <i>writer</i> , <i>author</i> ; stem scriptor-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scriptor	scriptōr-ēs
G. cōnsul-is	cōnsul-um	scriptōr-is	scriptōr-um
D. cōnsul-ī	cōnsul-ibus	scriptōr-ī	scriptōr-ibus
A. cōnsul-em	cōnsul-ēs	scriptōr-em	scriptōr-ēs
V. cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scriptor	scriptōr-ēs
A. cōnsul-e	cōnsul-ibus	scriptōr-e	scriptōr-ibus

81.

*Vocabulary.*sermō, -ōnis, m., *speech.*amor, -ōris, m., *love.*terror, -ōris, m., *terror.*pater, -tris, m., *father.*noster, -tra, -trum, *our.*Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter.*cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to burn.*dolor, -ōris, m., *sorrow.*timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor.*frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*varius, -a, -um, *different.*Caesar, -is, m., *Caesar.*recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to refresh.*

82.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Sermōnēs agricolārum dēlectant puerōs. 2. Iniūria amīcō meō magnōs dolōrēs dat. 3. Amor populī rēginam dēlectat. 4. Cōstantia Graecōrum Persārum timōris et terrōris causa erat. 5. Iuppiter erat pater deōrum et hominum. 6. Frātre tuum, amīce, hominēs iūstī amant. 7. Somnus hominēs dēfessōs recreat. 8. Pater Galbae, agricolae, in silvā ā feris virīs cremātus est.

II. 1. Caesar was a good consul and a great author. 2. Who is not loved by his brother? 3. Soldiers, why have you not freed the country of your fathers? 4. The priests of Jupiter were good men and labored in the temples with great constancy. 5. Cincinnatus was a great soldier and a skilful farmer. 6. The foot-soldiers and the horsemen besieged the town, but were put to flight by the inhabitants. 7. Many towns of Gaul have been taken by storm by the soldiers of Caesar. 8. In Germany the love of native land is great. 9. The language of the Romans was not known to the Greeks.

LESSON XXVI.

The Third Declension (*Continued*).

83. The following paradigms show the declension of feminine nouns with mute and liquid stems:—

virtūs, virtūtis, f., <i>virtue</i> , <i>bravery</i> ; stem virtūt-		hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter</i> ; stem hiem-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
G. virtūt-is	virtūt-um	hiem-is	hiem-um
D. virtūt-i	virtūt-ibus	hiem-i	hiem-ibus
A. virtūt-em	virtūt-ēs	hiem-em	hiem-ēs
V. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
A. virtūt-e	virtūt-ibus	hiem-e	hiem-ibus

RULES FOR GENDER.—Nouns ending in -ās, -ēs not increasing in the genitive, -is, -ūs, -aus, -ys, -s following a consonant, -x are feminine. Nouns ending in -dō, -gō, together with abstract and collective nouns in -iō, are feminine.

84.

Vocabulary.

mōs, mōris, m., <i>custom</i> .	multitūdō, -dinis, f., <i>multitude</i> .
voluptās, -ātis, f., <i>pleasure</i> .	lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light</i> .
sōl, sōlis, m., <i>sun</i> .	lēx, lēgis, f., <i>law</i> .
aestās, -ātis, f., <i>summer</i> .	color, -ōris, m., <i>color</i> .
hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter</i> .	uxor, -ōris, f., <i>wife</i> .
libertās, -ātis, f., <i>liberty</i> .	virtūs, -tūtis, f., <i>manliness</i> .
māter, tris, f., <i>mother</i> .	cīvitās, -ātis, f., <i>state</i> .
	flōs, -ōris, m., <i>flower</i> .

85.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Mūrī altī ōrant oppīda Germānōrum. 2. Multitūdō militum Rōmānōrum ducibus nōn erat nōta. 3. Bonī mōrēs puerōrum rēgī et rēginae māgnam voluptātem dabant. 4. Lūx sōlis est grāta poētae quī fābulam dē aestāte et hieme nārrat. 5. Color flōrum varius est. 6. Agricola cum uxōre suā in Italiā fuit. 7. Hominēs terrārum Europae libertātem amant. 8. Et cum audāciā pūgnant et civitatēs suās liberābunt. 9. Militēs in fugā vitam ducis suī māgnā cum virtūte servāverunt. 10. Lēgēs patriae sunt iūstae.

II. 1. What is the color of those horses which are in the field? 2. The king's feet are large, but those of his wife are small. 3. The soldiers of the Gauls were put to flight by the leaders of the Romans. 4. The people of Greece loved liberty. 5. Many men of Gaul fought bravely. 6. A good law is a light to an upright people. 7. The kind woman will be a good wife. 8. The light of the sun delights the farmer who labors in the field with a plow. 9. The soldiers who had been on the wall were put to flight by the leaders of the Germans. 10. The love of sons and daughters delights the minds of fathers and mothers.

*Ingum.*

LESSON XXVII.

The Third Declension (*Continued*).

86. The following paradigms show the declension of neuter nouns with consonant stems:—

tempus, temporis, n., <i>time</i> ; stem tempor-		flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i> ; stem flūmin-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
G. tempor-is	tempor-um	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
D. tempor-i	tempor-ibus	flūmin-i	flūmin-ibus
A. tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
V. tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
A. tempor-e	tempor-ibus	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

NOTE. — All neuter nouns have in the singular and plural three cases alike, the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative. In the plural all neuter nouns of the third declension end in a.

RULE FOR GENDER. — *Nouns of the third declension ending in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs, are neuter.*

7.

Vocabulary.

flūmén, -inis, n., <i>river</i> .	ōrātor, -ōris, m., <i>orator</i> .
tempus, -oris, n., <i>time</i> .	carmen, -inis, n., <i>song</i> .
corpus, -oris, n., <i>body</i> .	scelus, -eris, n., <i>crime</i> .
vulnus, -eris, n., <i>wound</i> .	coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>con-</i> <i>spiracy</i> .
iter, itineris, n., <i>way, jour-</i> <i>ney</i> .	certāmen, -inis, n., <i>struggle</i> .
nōmen, -inis, n., <i>name</i> .	periculum, -ī, n., <i>danger, peril</i> .
antiquus, -a, -um, <i>ancient</i> .	māximē (adv.), <i>greatly</i> .
inter (prep. with acc.), <i>between,</i> <i>among</i> .	mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i> <i>change</i> .

88.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Rhēnus est māgnū flūmen in Germāniā et mǎximē amātus est ā Germānīs. 2. Tempora mūtantur et hominēs mūtantur. 3. Corpora militum Germānōrum sunt māgna. 4. Nōmina multōrum poētārum et ōrātōrum Graecōrum clāra sunt. 5. Homērus proelia et certāmina Graecōrum nārrat. 6. Carmina Vergiliī discipulis māgnam voluptātem dant. 7. In flūmine sunt multae īnsulae; in ripīs flūminis sunt antiqua oppida. 8. Nōmen populī Rōmānī carminibus ā Vergiliō celebrātum est. 9. Iter inter Rōmam et terram Belgārum est longum et in itinere sunt multa perīcula. 10. Vulnus militi māgnōs dolōrēs dabat. 11. Pūra aqua hominibus et bēstiīs grāta est. 12. Carmina Homēri ōrātōrēs dēlectant. 13. Tempus est māgnū et antīquū flūmen.

II. 1. The conspiracy of Catiline was a crime. 2. The Germans love the customs of their native country. 3. The shields of the Greek soldiers were large. 4. The songs of Homer delight boys and girls, men and women. 5. For a long time the town was besieged by a multitude of men. 6. The number of orators in Greece and Rome was great. 7. Jupiter, the king of the gods, rewarded the priests in the temple. 8. The cavalry-men gained a great victory in the country of the Gauls. 9. The leader of the soldiers helped the women and children. 10. The crime of the orator was great, and the soldier killed him. 11. The children of the kings were in the town. 12. Jupiter is not our god. 13. Are not the rivers of Italy beautiful?

LESSON XXVIII.

The Ablative of Time.

89. RULE.— *Time when and time within which is expressed by means of the ablative without a preposition.*

EXAMPLES:—

a. Annō primō bellī Rōma oppugnāta est.

In the first year of the war Rome was besieged.

b. Decem annis Caesar multa oppida expugnāverit.

Within ten years Caesar will have taken by storm many towns.

90.

Vocabulary.

dolus, -ī, m., *treachery.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, noise.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch.*

secundus, -a, -um, *second.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, emperor.*

hīberna, -ōrum (plu.), n., *winter-quarters.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero.*

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation.*

decem (adj. indecl.), *ten.*

tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

nam (conj.), *for.*

91.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Primā lūce Caesaris milītēs oppidum māgnō clāmōre occupāverunt. 2. Eō tempore sacerdōtēs oppidānōs in templum vocābant. 3. Tum milītēs mulierēs et puerōs necāverunt. 4. Aestāte arborēs et herbae et flōrēs sunt pul-

chrī¹. 5. Antiquis temporibus erant in Graeciā multī et clārī poētae et scriptōrēs. 6. Memoriā Cicerōnis, māgnī ōrātōris, militēs Rōmānī in multis bellis cum Gallis pūgnāvērunt. 7. Māter mea est soror patris tuī. 8. Tertiā vigiliā militēs aurum ex oppidō māgnā cum celeritāte portāvērunt. 9. Māter et sorōrēs imperātōris erant in castris Caesaris. 10. Hieme bēstiae silvārum ab agricolis necantur.

II. 1. The state praised the justice of the judges. 2. Cincinnatus, the famous commander, called his soldiers into winter-quarters. 3. The nation praises the wisdom of its priests and judges. 4. The senators celebrated the victory of their brother, Cicero. 5. The upright man will be a good father; the upright woman, a good mother. 6. In summer there are flowers in the fields. 7. In ancient times there were many poets in Italy. 8. The multitude of the Germans was the cause of fear among the nations of Europe. 9. In summer the farmer plows, but in winter he does not work in the fields. 10. Within the second hour the soldiers saved their leader.

¹ Agreeing with the last noun.



Tubicinēs.

The Third Declension (Continued).

I- stems end regularly in **-ium** in the genitive plural. A few nouns in **-is** have both **-im** and **-em** in the accusative singular. These will be noted as they occur. Some masculines and feminines, and almost all neuters, have the ablative singular in **-ī**. Masculines and feminines have **-īs** and **-ēs** in the accusative plural, but the neuters all end in **-ia**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. civis	civēs	hostis	hostēs
G. civis	civium	hostis	hostium
D. civi	civibus	hostī	hostibus
A. civem	civēs, -is	hostem	hostēs, -is
V. civis	civēs	hostis	hostēs
A. cive	civibus	hoste	hostibus

nox, noctis, f., night;
stem nocti-

animal, animālis, n., animal;
stem animāli-

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. nox	noctēs	animal	animālia
G. noctis	noctium	animālis	animālium
D. noctī	noctibus	animālī	animālibus
A. noctem	noctēs, -is	animal	animālia
V. nox	noctēs	animal	animālia
A. nocte	noctibus	animālī	animālibus

93.

Vocabulary.

cīvis, -is, m. and f., citizen.

nox, noctis, f., night.

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), air.

mare, maris, n., sea.

nāvis, -is, f., ship.

avis, -is, f., bird.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

animal, -ālis, n., animal.

hostis, -is, m., public enemy.

inimīcus, -i, m., private enemy.

vectīgal, -ālis, n., revenue.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

classis, -is, f., fleet.

auris, -is, f., ear.

pars, partis, f., part.

ubīque (adv.), everywhere.

94.

Exercises in Translation.

- I. 1. In terrā, in marī, in āere, ubīque sunt animālia.
 2. Vectigālia Rōmānōrum sunt māgna. 3. Bonī civēs patriam amant. 4. In Ītaliā sunt multa flūmina et altī montēs.
 5. Galli et Belgae erant hostēs Rōmānōrum et ab hīs fugātī sunt. 6. Multae et māgnae nāvēs multārum nātiōnum sunt in marī.
 7. Classis māgna hostium Rōmānōs nōn dēlectābat. 8. Vōx multārum avium aurēs hominum dēlectat.
 9. Bonī mōrēs civium rēgī et rēgīnae māgnam voluptātem dabant. 10. In multis partibus urbis templa deōrum sunt.

II. 1. In winter, the nights are long ; in summer, the sun gives much light. 2. The treachery of the soldiers did not please their commander, who was a good man. 3. In the third watch of the night, the legions were called out from camp. 4. The inhabitants of the cities carried birds and small animals into the temples. 5. Galba will be the commander of a large fleet of ships. 6. In the night, sleep is pleasing to men and animals. 7. The voice of the messenger delights the ears of the citizens, for he reports a great victory. 8. The senators were good men and saved the nation. 9. Fraud and treachery have been the cause of much strife. 10. Who does not praise the wisdom and the prudence of the inhabitants of the cities?



LESSON XXX.

Genitives and Ablatives.

95. RULE. — *Words denoting a part are used with a genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.*

Cardinal numerals and **quīdam** generally take the ablative with **ē**, **ex**, or **dē** to express the whole of which a part is taken ; the ordinals generally take the partitive genitive.

EXAMPLES : —

a. **Nix** est in parte montis.

Snow is on a part of the mountain.

b. **Decem ex** militibus vulnerātī sunt.

Ten of the soldiers were wounded.

c. **Prīmus Rōmānōrum** fuit Rōmulus.

The first of the Romans was Romulus.

RULE. — *The ablative or the genitive may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

EXAMPLES: —

a. **Cincinnātus fuit vir clārī nōminis.**

Cincinnatus was a man of famous name.

b. **Cincinnātus fuit vir clārō nōmine.**

Cincinnatus was a man with famous name.

96.

Vocabulary.

Iānuārius, -ī, m., *January.*

Februārius, -ī, m., *February.*

Martius, -ī, m., *March.*

Aprīlis, -is, m., *April.*

Māius, -ī, m., *May.*

Iūnius, -ī, m., *June.*

Iūlius, -ī, m., *July.*

Augustus, -ī, m., *August.*

September, -bris, m., *Septem-*

Octōber, -bris, October. [*ber.*]

November, -bris, November.

December, -bris, December.

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *season.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal.*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress.*

vīgintī (adj. indec.), *twenty.*

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*

lapis, -pidis, m., *stone.*

vīctor, -ōris, m., *victor.*

ars, artis, f., *art.*

integritās, -ātis, f., *integrity.*

līberālītās, -ātis, f., *liberality.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, —, *to fly.*

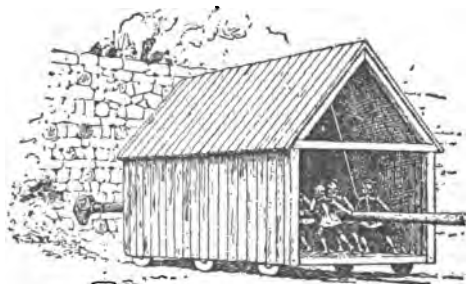
97.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Nōmina mēnsium sunt: Iānuārius, Februārius, Martius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Iūlius, Augustus, September, Octōber, November, December. 2. Aestās est tempus pulchrōrum flōrum. 3. Hiems est tempestās māgnārum nivium. 4. Hannibal fuit dux Poenōrum et fuit vir māgnā

virtūte. 5. Decem ex militibus arma in urbem portāvērunt. 6. In antiquā parte urbis filiī Galbae necātī sunt. 7. Germānī sunt virī māgnō corpore. 8. Agricola agrum arātrō arāvit; nam fuit vir māgnae diligentiae. 9. Arx fuit aedificium multōrum et altōrum mūrōrum. 10. Vīgintī ex obsidibus fuērunt puerī rēgum.

II. 1. Jura is a mountain of many stones and of narrow ways. 2. The Roman soldiers, men of great firmness, had been the victors in many battles. 3. The king and queen praise the art of the poet. 4. January and February are months of winter; July is a part of summer. 5. Cicero was a man of great integrity. 6. Victoria was a queen with great liberality of mind. 7. In winter the birds will fly to lands of beautiful flowers. 8. The people love a judge of great wisdom and justice. 9. The farmer, Galba, is a man of great diligence. 10. The leaders praised the bravery of the soldiers.



Ariēs.

LESSON XXXI.

The Ablatives of Specification and Cause.

98. RULES. — a. *The ablative is used to specify that in respect to which anything is true.*

b. *The ablative is used to denote cause.*

NOTE. — The prepositions **dē** and **ex** with the ablative, and **ob** and **propter** with the accusative, are sometimes used to express cause.

EXAMPLES: —

- a. **Germānī Belgās virtūte superābant.**
The Germans surpassed the Belgians in bravery.
- b. **Militēs Caesarem liberālitāte laudant.**
The soldiers praise Caesar for his generosity.
- c. **Multīs dē causīs Caesar militēs laudāvit.**
For many reasons Caesar praised the soldiers.

99. Vocabulary.

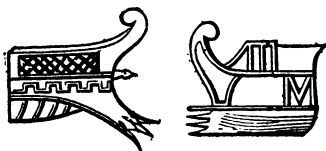
mors, mortis, f., death.	fortiter (adv.), bravely.
altitūdō, -dinis, f., height,	māgnitūdō, -dinis, f., size.
depth.	auxilium, -ī, n., help.
gēns, gentis, f., tribe.	numerus, -ī, m., number.
socius, -ī, m., ally, associate.	scientia, -ae, f., knowledge.
	ēlegantia, -ae, f., elegance.

100. Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Miles erat māgnā audāciā, et dux eum virtūte laudāvit. 2. Rēx et rēgīna erant maestī morte filiī. 3. Inter agricolās Galba erat prīmus māgnitūdine. 4. Virī

et fēminae illius terrae erant hominēs māgnō corpore.
5. Rōmānī saepe nōn multitudine, sed fortitudine militum
victōrēs fuērunt. 6. Elephantī māgnitudine multās bēstiās
superant. 7. Poēta Rhēnum altitudine laudat. 8. Gentēs
Germāniae cōstantiā et integritāte mōrum clārae erant.
9. Auxilium sociīs ā Rōmānīs datum est. 10. Hī multās
nātiōnēs numerō superant.

II. 1. For many reasons the soldiers of the Persians
fought bravely on that day. 2. But they were put to flight
by the Greeks, who were famous on account of their knowl-
edge of war. 3. The soldiers of Italy surpass those of
Greece in arms. 4. The priest of Jupiter works in the
temple with great care. 5. The pirates were killed on
account of their conspiracy and crime. 6. We love the
winter on account of the beautiful snow; we praise the
summer because of the flowers. 7. The Greeks surpassed
the Romans in the arts. 8. Rome excelled in good laws
and upright judges. 9. The writer praised the boy on
account of the elegance of his speech. 10. Men of great
boldness are not always men of great wisdom.



Rōstra.

LESSON XXXII.

Review in Vocabulary.

101. The following vocabulary contains all the new words introduced since Lesson XVI. These words should be studied with great care ; the English equivalents should be learned, and the spelling and the quantity of vowels should be mastered.

102.*Word List.*

ā	Augustus	contentus	flōs
aedificium	auris	corpus	flūmen
āēr	auxilium	cremō	fortiter
aestās	avis	cūius	fōrtūna
altitūdō	beātus	cum	frāter
amor	Caesar	cūra	fraus
ancilla	carmen	decem	fugō
animal	castīgō	December	Gallus
annus	celebrō	dēfessus	gēns
ānte	cēna	diū	Germānus
antīquus	certāmen	dolor	grātus
Aprīlis	Cicerō	dolus	habitō
apud	Cincinnātus	dux	Hannibal
arātrum	cīvis	ē	hiberna
arbor	cīvitās	ēducō	hīc
armō	clāmor	ēius	hiems
arō	classis	ēlegantia	historia
ars	color	eques	Homērus
artifex	coniūratiō	expūgnō	homō
arx	cōstantia	Februārius	hōra
attentus	cōsul	fīdus	hostis

inimicus	mātrōna	ōrātor	socius
lānuārius	māximē	os	sōl
idōneus	mēns	pars	somnus
illud	mēnsis	pater	soror
imperātor	mīles	patientia	superbus
insidiae	mōns	pedes	superō
integritās	morbus	periculum	tempestās
inter	mors	Persa	tempus
is	mōs	pēs	terror
iter	mox	Poenus	tertius
iūdex	mulier	postea	timor
lūlius	multitūdō	primus	tum
lūnius	mūnerō	princeps	tūtus
Iuppiter	mūs	prō	ubique
iustus	mūtō	probus	urbs
iuvō	nam	proelium	uxor
labōrō	nātiō	pūgnō	vallum
laetus	nāvis	pūrus	varius
lapis	necō	quī	vastō
legiō	nix	recreō	vectigal
lēx	nōmen	reportō	vīcinus
liberālītās	noster	rēx	vīctor
liberō	nōtus	Rōmulus	vigilia
libertās	November	rūmor	vigintī
locus	nox	sacerdōs	virtūs
lūx	numerus	scelus	vituperō
maestus	nunc	scientia	vocō
māgnitūdō	obses	scrīptor	volō
Maius	occupō	secundus	voluptās
mare	Octōber	senātor	vōx
Martius	oppidānus	sermō	vulnerō
māter	oppūgnō	sī	

LESSON XXXIII.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

103. Adjectives of the third declension are called adjectives of *one*, *two*, or *three* terminations. Adjectives of *one* termination have but one form in the nominative singular for the masculine, feminine, and neuter; adjectives of *two* terminations have the same form in the nominative singular for the masculine and the feminine, and a different form for the neuter; adjectives of *three* terminations have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender.

Adjectives of *two* terminations end in the masculine and feminine singular in *-is*, neuter, *-e*; adjectives of *three* terminations end in *-er*, *-is*, *-e*. They have regularly *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, *-ēs* or *-īs* in the accusative plural of masculines and feminines, and *-ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of neuters.

104. Adjectives of *one* termination are declined like *sapiēns*; adjectives of *two* terminations, like *fortis*.

sapiēns, -entis, wise.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiētēs</i>	<i>sapiēntia</i>
G. <i>sapiēntis</i>	<i>sapiēntis</i>	<i>sapiēntium</i>	<i>sapiēntium</i>
D. <i>sapiēntī</i>	<i>sapiēntī</i>	<i>sapiēntibus</i>	<i>sapiēntibus</i>
A. <i>sapiēntem</i>	<i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiētēs, -īs</i>	<i>sapiēntia</i>
V. <i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiētēs</i>	<i>sapiēntia</i>
A. <i>sapiēntī</i>	<i>sapiēntī</i>	<i>sapiēntibus</i>	<i>sapiēntibus</i>

fortis, -e, brave, strong.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G. fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
D. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
A. fortem	forte	fortēs, -is	fortia
V. fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
A. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

105.

Vocabulary.

fidēlis, -e, faithful.

fertilis, -e, fertile.

fortis, -e, brave, strong.

prūdēns, -entis, prudent.

Fēlix, -icis, m., Felix.

fēlix, -icis, happy.

ingēns, -entis, huge.

innocēns, -entis, innocent.

exemplum, -i, n., example.

iuvenis, -is (gen. plu. -um),

m., a youth.

gravis, -e, heavy.

Sulla, -ae, m., Sulla.

cognōmen, -inis, n.; cognomen.

sapiēns, -entis, wise.

omnis, -e, every, all.

periculōsus, -a, -um, perilous.

imprūdēns, -entis, imprudent.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

106.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Cīvis probus rēgī fidēlis est; servī dominis nōn semper fidēlēs fuērunt. 2. Clārī scrīptōrēs Rōmānōrum multōs et fertilēs agrōs laudābant. 3. Bellum saepe populō cūra gravis est. 4. Sulla vir fortis et prūdēns fuit; cognōmen Sullae erat Fēlix. 5. Hominēs imprudentēs saepe in periculis sunt. 6. Graecōrum fortitūdō in omnibus periculis magna erat, māximē in bellis Persārum. 7. Ingēns fuit praeda Graecōrum in pūgnā. 8. Hominibus innocentibus

crimina improbōrum hominum sunt nōn periculōsa. 9. Exempla virōrum probōrum et sapientium omnibus hominibus ūtilia sunt. 10. Sermōnēs virōrum sapientium animōs iuvenum dēlectant.

II. 1. Hannibal was a brave and skilful general. 2. The fertile fields of the Romans were praised by famous writers. 3. The farmer plowed his fertile fields with great care. 4. The legions of the Romans were always brave. 5. Happy is that man who is prudent and wise. 6. The good poet was loved by all the children. 7. In the huge forest, the voices of birds delight the ears of men. 8. That innocent youth is the son of our friend, Galba. 9. Cincinnatus, who was called from the fertile fields into battle, was praised by all the Romans. 10. Wise laws are useful to the state and the citizens.

LESSON XXXIV.

Adjectives of the Third Declension (*Continued*).

107. Adjectives of three terminations are declined as follows :—

acer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
A.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -is	ācrēs, -is	ācria
V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
A.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

108.

Vocabulary.

acer, ācris, ācre, *eager*.celeber, -bris, -bre, *famous, celebrated*.celeritās, -ātis, f., *swiftness*.bene (adv.), *well*.forum, -ī, n., *forum*.vetus, -eris, *old*.dulcis, -e, *sweet*.mortālis, -e, *mortal*.immortālis, -e, *immortal*.salūbris, -e, *wholesome*.celer, -eris, -ere, *swift*.regiō, -ōnis, f., *region*.equester, -tris, -tre, *equestrian*.audāx, -ācis, *bold*.civīlis, -e, *civil*.commūnis, -e, *common*.brevis, -e, *short*.admīrābilis, -e, *admirable*.violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to violate*.

109.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Ācria erant bella Rōmānōrum et Germānōrum.
 2. Multae regiōnēs Ītaliae nōn sunt salūbrēs. 3. Rōma erat urbs Ītaliae celebris. 4. Equus celer Cincinnātum, imperātorem, dēlectavit; nam equitem bene portāvit.
 5. Equestris statua celebris cōsulis erat in māgnō forō Rōmānōrum. 6. Iuppiter erat pater hominum mortālium et immortalium deōrum. 7. Amīcis omnia gaudia et omnēs dolōrēs sunt commūnēs. 8. Brevi tempore cēna parābitur.
 9. Celeritās nāvium in mari est admīrābilis. 10. Hominēs qui civīlēs lēgēs violant, castigābuntur.

II. 1. Life is sweet to good and to bad men. 2. Swift birds fly in the air. 3. Birds are known for their swiftness.
 4. In ancient times Mercury was the swift messenger of the immortal gods. 5. He was loved by mortal men, who gave gold for him in the temple. 6. Art is long; life is short.

7. Caesar surpassed many bold generals in justice and wisdom. 8. The inhabitants of Germany give praise to swift animals. 9. In a short time the brave soldiers put the enemy to flight. 10. The sweet flowers delight the little girl. 11. Good grain is a wholesome food for horses.



LESSON XXXV.

The Accusative of Time and Space.

110. RULE. — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

EXAMPLES. —

a. **Multōs annōs pater meus erat in Germāniā.**

For many years my father was in Germany.

b. **Mūrum decem pedēs altum agricola aedificat.**

The farmer builds a wall ten feet high.

NOTE. — Great care must be exercised to distinguish the accusative of time from the ablative of time.

Review paragraph 89.

111.

Vocabulary.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthaginian.*

initium, -i, n., *beginning.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to winter.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to walk.*

trīgintā (adj. indecl.), *thirty.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*

quattuor (adj. indecl.), *four.*

calidus, -a, -um, *warm.*

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold.*

spatium, -i, n., *space, distance.*

folium, -i, n., *leaf.*

trāns (prep. with acc.), *across.*

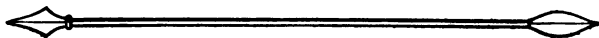
112.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Graeci Trōiam decem annōs oppugnāvērunt. 2. Mūrus urbis vīgintī pedēs altus est. 3. Prīmō annō bellī Pūnicī multi virī necātī sunt. 4. Primum annum bellī hostēs urbem oppugnābant. 5. Initiō aestātis avēs ex frīgidis terrīs in calidās terrās volant. 6. Caesar in Galliā multōs annōs hiemāvit. 7. Agricola et uxor sua in agrīs māgnū spatium ambulāvērunt. 8. Bellō trigintā annōrum multae Germāniae urbēs vastatae sunt. 9. Aestātem pulchrī florēs hanc arborem, folia illam ōrnant.

II. 1. Snow is on the high mountain during the winter. 2. In the first Punic war many ships were built by the Romans. 3. Caesar's messengers carried many letters from Gaul during the months of summer. 4. And the Romans were delighted on account of these letters which were carried into the forum in September.¹ 5. The slaves walked a great distance across the high mountains. 6. For a short time the arms were carried into the citadel. 7. In a short time the soldiers besieged the citadel and killed many people. 8. In the beginning of the war the Carthaginian general fought with thirty elephants. 9. Troy was a famous city for many years.

¹The names of months are adjectives and modify *mēnsis* understood, consequently when "in September" is translated into Latin it will read "Septembri" (ī being the ablative ending).



Hasta.

LESSON XXXVI.

The Second Conjugation.

113. All verbs with the present infinitive in *-ē* are classed under the second conjugation.

NOTE. — Let paragraph 53 be reviewed.

114. Learn the indicative active and passive of *monēre*, to advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *monēō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus*.

<i>Active.</i>		INDICATIVE.		<i>Passive.</i>	
		PRESENT.			
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. moneō	monēmus	moneor		monēmur	
2. monēs	monētis	monēris, -re		monēmini	
3. monet	monent	monētur		monentur	
IMPERFECT.					
1. monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar		monēbāmur	
2. monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re		monēbāmini	
3. monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur		monēbantur	
FUTURE.					
1. monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor		monēbimur	
2. monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re		monēbimini	
3. monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur		monēbuntur	
PERFECT.					
1. monui	monuimus	monitus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{-a, -um,} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	monitī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{-ae, -a,} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
2. monuisti	monuistis				
3. monuit	monuerunt, -re	-a, -um,		-ae, -a,	

PLUPERFECT.							
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. monueram	monuerāmus	monitus,	{	eram	moniti,	{	erāmus
2. monuerās	monuerātis			erās			erātis
3. monuerat	monuerant			-a, -um,			erat
FUTURE PERFECT.							
1. monuerō	monuerimus	monitus,	{	erō	moniti,	{	erimus
2. monueris	monueritis			eris			eritis
3. monuerit	monuerint			-a, -um,			erit

NOTE.—In the above paradigm the English equivalents have purposely been omitted. The student should have acquired them in connection with the first conjugation.

115.

Vocabulary.

rūsticus, -ī, m., <i>peasant</i> , <i>farmer.</i>	gaudeō, -ēre, —, <i>gāvisus</i> <i>sum, to rejoice.</i>
orātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>oration.</i>	grāmen, -inis, n., <i>grass.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, <i>to increase.</i>	ēgregius, -a, -um, <i>excellent.</i>
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, <i>to</i> <i>fill.</i>	habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>to have.</i>
deleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, <i>to</i> <i>destroy.</i>	iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, <i>to lie.</i>
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, <i>to</i> <i>teach.</i>	lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, <i>to</i> <i>grieve.</i>
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, <i>to bloom,</i> <i>flourish.</i>	moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>to ad-</i> <i>vise.</i>
	teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, <i>to hold.</i>
	videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, <i>to</i> <i>see.</i>

116.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Boni hominēs amicōs ūtilēs habent. 2. Scelera pirā-
tārū incolārū insulae dolōrem auxērunt. 3. Rōmānī
arboribus et lapidibus fossam complēvērunt. 4. Multae et in-

gentēs arborēs in silvā iacēbant. 5. Probi hominēs gaudent ; improbi hominēs bonis lēgibus lūgent. 6. Primō vĕre arborēs flōrent. 7. Primā lūce vidēbimus nostrōs amīcōs quī nunc in hāc urbe sunt. 8. Illi discipulī ā magistrō docentur.

II. 1. Who will destroy the temple which the priests love ? 2. The town which Caesar's soldiers besieged was filled with food and arms. 3. The farmer and his wife have mourned a long time on account of the death of their son. 4. The peasants of Italy have horses and plows with which they plow the fields. 5. In summer, grass and flowers are seen on the mountains ; in winter, snow. 6. He who is advised by many, advises many. 7. Many beautiful trees flourish in Sicily, for it is a warm country. 8. The orations which were delivered (were had) by Cicero against Catiline, were excellent.

LESSON XXXVII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

117. As in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison,—the Positive, the Comparative, the Superlative. Those regularly compared drop the stem vowel of the positive, if there is one, and add *-ior*, *-ius* to form the comparative, and generally *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to form the superlative ; but adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the positive. The comparative is always an adjective of the third declension of two terminations ; the superlative, of the first and the second declension, of three terminations.

118. The following are examples of adjectives compared :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow.</i>	angustior, -ius.	angustissimus, -a, -um.
fortis, -e, brave.	fortior, -ius.	fortissimus, -a, -um.
fēlix, happy.	fēlicior, -ius.	fēlicissimus, -a, -um.
niger, -gra, -grum, <i>black.</i>	nigrior, -ius.	nigerrimus, -a, -um.
ācer, -cris, -cre, <i>sharp.</i>	ācrior, -ius.	ācerrimus, -a, -um.

119. Comparatives are declined as follows : —

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G. fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D. fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
A. fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs, -īs	fortiōra
V. fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
A. fortiōre, -ī	fortiōre, -ī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

120. *Exercises in Comparing and Declining.*

I. Compare : 1. calidus, frigidus, brevis. 2. admirābilis, celebris, dulcis, prudēns. 3. fertilis, sapiēns, pulcher, ūtilis, clārus.

II. Decline miser in the comparative degree, all genders. 2. Decline periculōsus in the superlative degree, all genders. 3. Decline sapiēns in the positive and comparative degrees, all genders. 4. Decline omnis in all forms.

LESSON XXXVIII.

The Use of the Comparative.

121. RULE. — *The comparative is followed by quam, and the names of the things compared are in the same case. However, after the nominative and the accusative, quam may be omitted, and the noun or pronoun following the comparative is in the ablative case.*

NOTE. — The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high a degree of the quality.

EXAMPLES. —

- a. **Vīta hominibus cārīor est quam pecūnia.**
Life is dearer to men than money.
- b. **Vīta hominibus cārīor pecūniā est.**
Life is dearer to men than money.
- c. **Hominēs vītā cārīōrem habent quam pecūniā.**
Men hold life dearer than money.
- d. **Hominēs vītā cārīōrem pecūniā habent.**
Men hold life dearer than money.
- e. **Dat pulchrius dōnum uxōrī quam filiāe.**
He gives a more beautiful gift to his wife than to his daughter.
- f. **Vīta hominibus est cārīor.**
Life is rather dear to men.

122.*Vocabulary.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

nōbilis, -e, *noble.*

firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*

asinus, -ī, m., *ass.*

quam (conj.), *than.*

nihil (indecl.), n., *nothing.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your.*

Padus, -ī, m., *Po.*

Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates.*

123.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Bellum est cārius militī quam pāx. 2. Quis est nōbilioꝛ rēge hūius nātiōis? 3. Hortus hūius agricolae est pulchrior quam hortus illius. 4. Aestāte noctēs sunt breviores quam hieme. 5. Filius cārior patrī quam mātṛi est. 6. Num amīcus tuus montem altiōrem Iūrā vidit? 7. Nihil patriae ūtilius est quam bonae lēgēs. 8. Nārratne poēta fābulam dē hominibus audāciōribus quam Rōmānis? 9. Rōmae lēgēs sunt praesidium cīvitatīs firmius quam militēs.

II. 1. In your garden, friend, are more beautiful flowers than in mine. 2. The teacher is too kind to his pupils who are bad boys. 3. The Rhine is a wider river than the Po. 4. A horse is swifter than an ass. 5. The orators of Greece are more famous than the orators of Rome. 6. In ancient times the Romans had shorter swords than the Germans. 7. The men of that city were rather proud on account of their victories. 8. Africa is a warmer country than Europe. 9. Socrates, the Greek, was a wiser man than Hannibal, the Carthaginian.

*Sandalia.*

LESSON XXXIX.

The Use of the Superlative.

124. The superlative is an adjective of three terminations of the first and second declensions, and is declined as such.

NOTE. — The superlative is often used to express not the highest, but a very high degree of the quality.

EXAMPLE. — **Mōns est altissimus.** *The mountain is very high.*

Review paragraphs 33 and 57.

125.*Vocabulary.*

Rhodanus , -ī, m., <i>Rhone.</i>	potēns , -entis, <i>powerful.</i>
signifer , -ī, m., <i>standard-bearer.</i>	pudor , -ōris, m., <i>shame.</i>
pretiōsus , -a, -um, <i>precious.</i>	sāctus , -a, -um, <i>sacred.</i>
avārus , -a, -um, <i>avaricious.</i>	viridis , -e, <i>green.</i>
opus , -eris, n., <i>work.</i>	infēlix , -icis, <i>unhappy.</i>
	pensum , -ī, n., <i>task.</i>
nunquam (adv.), <i>never.</i>	

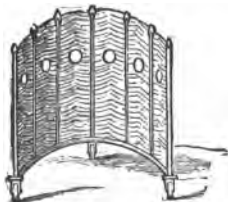
126.*Exercises in Translation.*

- I. 1. Rōma erat pulcherrima omnium urbium Ītaliae.
 2. Frātrī meō cārissimus es, amīce. 3. Cārissimus amicus frātris meī es.
 4. Sī avārus eris, amīce, nunquam fēlicissimus eris.
 5. Germānī sumus ; Germānis patria est cāris-sima.
 6. Semper inimīci erāmus hominum improbissimō-rum.
 7. Quis fābulās pulchriōrēs nārrat quam Vergilius?
 8. Signifer illius legiōnis fuit vir validissimus. 9. Rhodanus

fuit clārissimum Galliae flūmen, et multa sāncta templa in rīpīs fuērunt. 10. Libertās est pretiōsissimum dōnum quod deī mortālibus hominibus dedērunt.

II. 1. The soldiers of this most famous legion fought bravely. 2. The green leaves of the trees which we see in summer are more beautiful than the snow of winter. 3. I am the most unhappy of all men. 4. The works of my friend, the poet, are excellent; the works of Vergil are more excellent;¹ the works of Homer are most excellent. 5. Of all the Gauls, the Belgians are the bravest. 6. The teacher gave his pupils a very severe task. 7. In ancient times the Persians were the bravest people of Asia. 8. For a long time the kings of the Persians were the most powerful of all the kings of Asia. 9. Afterwards the Greeks fought with the Persians for the liberty of their country. 10. The leaders of the Greeks were more prudent and the soldiers braver than the Persians.

¹ See paragraph 132.



Phuteus.

LESSON XL.

Comparison of Adjectives (*Continued*).

127. Six adjectives ending in *-lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *-limus* to form the superlative. They are compared as follows : —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis, -e, easy.</i>	<i>facilior, -ius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>difficilis, -e, difficult.</i>	<i>difficilior, -ius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>similis, -e, like.</i>	<i>similior, -ius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>dissimilis, -e, unlike.</i>	<i>dissimilior, -ius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>humilis, -e, low.</i>	<i>humilior, -ius</i>	<i>humillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>gracilis, -e, slender.</i>	<i>gracilior, -ius</i>	<i>gracillimus, -a, -um</i>

NOTE. — Review paragraph 117.

128. The following adjectives form the superlatives irregularly. The positives are seldom used.

<i>exterus, outward.</i>	<i>exterior, outer.</i>	<i>{ extrēmus, } outmost.</i> <i>{ extimus, }</i>
<i>Inferus, below.</i>	<i>Inferior, lower.</i>	<i>{ infimus, } lowest.</i> <i>{ imus, }</i>
<i>posterus, following.</i>	<i>posterior, latter.</i>	<i>{ postrēmus, } last.</i> <i>{ postumus, }</i>
<i>superus, above.</i>	<i>superior, higher.</i>	<i>{ suprēmus, } highest.</i> <i>{ summus, }</i>

129. Some adjectives derived from prepositions and adverbs occur in the comparative and the superlative only; they follow : —

PREPOSITION.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cis, citrā, on this side.	citerior, hither.	citimus, hithermost.
in, intrā, within.	interior, inner.	intimus, inmost.
prae, prō, before.	prior, former.	prīmus, first.
prope (adv.), near.	propior, nearer.	proximus { <i>nearest.</i> <i>next.</i>
ultrā (adv.), beyond.	ulterior, farther.	ultimus, farthest.

130. RULE. — *Adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites, are followed by the dative.*

EXAMPLE. — **Hic mōns est similis Iūrae.**
This mountain is like Jura.

131. Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Omnium puellārum quās vidī, gracillima est Cornēlia.
2. Nihil est facilius pensō, quod magister puerō dabit.
3. Cōnsilium patris meī est ūtilius quam cōnsilium frātris meī. 4. Poēta est dissimillimus frātrī suō, militi māgnā audāciā. 5. Iter ex urbe in ulteriōrem Galliam est difficillimum altissimis montibus. 6. Pulcherrimae herbae sunt nōn semper ūtilissimae. 7. In summō¹ monte sunt variae bēstiae. 8. Gallia est terra proxima Hispāniae. 9. In proximō agrō dux cōpiārum Rōmānōrum locum castris idōneum parāvit.

II. 1. That beautiful tree is rather slender but very strong. 2. Italy, the fatherland of Caesar, is a low country. 3. In former times Italy was the most famous country of Europe. 4. Those men had been in hither Gaul for many

¹ On top of the mountain.

years. 5. The top of the mountain was seized by the forces of the enemy. 6. The men of this country are very unlike the men of Africa. 7. The man who carried the gift into the temple was the son of a peasant. 8. Rome is not the town nearest to the sea. 9. The trees were higher than the walls.

LESSON XLI.

Comparison of Adjectives (*Continued*).

132. The following adjectives are compared irregularly :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
vetus (gen. -eris), <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
senex (gen. senis), <i>aged</i> .	{ senior māior nātū }	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	{ iunior minor nātū }	minimus nātū

Some adjectives are compared as in English, by means of adverbs, especially those ending in -us following a vowel.

EXAMPLES. — idōneus (*fit*), magis idōneus, māximē idōneus; pius (*pious*), magis pius, māximē pius; varius (*various*), magis varius, māximē varius.

133. Declension of the comparative of **multus** :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. —	—	plūribus	plūribus
A. —	plūs	plūrēs, -is	plūra
A. —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

NOTE. — The masculine or feminine singular of the comparative is expressed with the neuter and the partitive genitive.

EXAMPLE. — **Plūs pecūniae habet quam sapientiae.**

He has more money than wisdom.

The dative singular is not found in classic Latin.

134.*Vocabulary.*

ferrum, -ī, n., <i>iron, sword.</i>	candidus, -a, -um, <i>white, fair.</i>
fames, -is, f., <i>hunger.</i>	collis, -is, m., <i>hill.</i>
pius, -a, -um, <i>pious.</i>	verbum, -ī, n., <i>word.</i>
Helvētius, -ī, m., <i>an Helvetian.</i>	Helvētia, -ae, f., <i>Helvetia.</i>
Alexander, -drī, m., <i>Alexander.</i>	contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, <i>to contain.</i>

135.*Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sōl māior est quam terra; lūna minor est quam terra. 3. Urbs Rōma māxima et pulcherrima est omnium Ītaliae urbium. 4. Dux Poenōrum fuit senior quam rēx Rōmānus, et urbs illius fuit vetustior urbe hūius. 5. Plūrimae Graeciae civitātēs liberae erant. 6. Plūrēs hominēs ferrō necātī

sunt quam fame. 7. Num fuērunt sacerdōtēs, quī erant in templīs Rōmānīs, magis pī quam sacerdōtēs Graecōrum? 8. Primō bellō Pūnicō Rōmānī māximās classēs aedificāverunt. 9. Plūrēs candidī hominēs in Eurōpā sunt quam in Āfricā.

II. 1. Alexander was the greatest man of his time. 2. The most difficult tasks are not always the best for the pupils. 3. Old men are wiser than young men. 4. What place is more fit for a camp than this hill? 5. Many temples of Italy and Greece are very old. 6. The Rhine is the largest of the many rivers of Germany. 7. The best oration contains the most wisdom, but not always the most words. 8. The Gauls fight with more clamor than the Romans. 9. Helvetia is a smaller country than Italy, but the Helvetians are larger men than the Romans.



LESSON XLII.

The Ablative of Degree of Difference.

136. RULE.— *The ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things.*

EXAMPLE.—

Rōmānī erant multō fortiōrēs quam hostēs.

The Romans were much braver (braver by much) than their enemies.

137.

Vocabulary.

lupus , -I, m., <i>wolf</i> .	uva , -ae, f., <i>grape</i> .
vulpēs , -is, f., <i>fox</i> .	Tiberis , -is (acc. -im), m.,
Graecus , -a, -um, <i>Greek</i> .	<i>Tiber</i> .
Ticinus , -I, m., <i>Ticinus</i> .	dēfatīgō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to</i>
Carthāgō , -inis, f., <i>Carthage</i> .	<i>exhaust</i> .
leō , leōnis , m., <i>lion</i> .	numerus , -I, m., <i>number</i> .
	potēns , -tentis, <i>powerful</i> .

138.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Vulpēs et lupus sunt ferae ; hic est multō validior quam ille. 2. Nātiō Rōmāna fuit māior multis gentibus quam nātiō Graeca. 3. Galba, agricola, est māior nātū decem annis quam frāter, nauta. 4. Tiberis est multō māior quam Padus ; sed hic est pulcherrimum flūmen Ītalīae. 5. Ticinus est flūmen citeriōris Galliae et est clārissimus fluvius. 6. Fossa, quae circum urbem est, multis pedibus longior est quam mūrus. 7. Carthāgō fuit urbs parvō vetustior Rōmā. 8. Cicerō fuit ōrātor multō optimus et clārissimus Rōmānōrum. 9. Multō māxima terrae pars ā populis antiquis nōn vīsa erat.

II. 1. The forces of the Romans were greater by a large number of men than the forces of the enemy. 2. The pupil's task was very easy, but he had been exhausted with hunger. 3. Is the fox much shrewder than the wolf ? 4. Who has told the story of (dē) the fox and the grapes ? 5. The story of the fox and the grapes is older by far than the story of the lion. 6. The number of the Greeks was much smaller than the number of the Persians. 7. But the bravery of the

Greeks was much greater than the bravery of the enemy.
 8. The Rhine is many feet wider than the Po. 9. The emperors were by far more powerful than the consuls.

LESSON XLIII.

Formation of Adverbs.

139. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding *ē*.

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter*. Stems ending in *nti* drop *ti* before the addition.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
clārus	clāro	clārē , <i>illustriously</i> .
miser	misero	miserē , <i>wretchedly</i> .
dīligēns	dīligenti	dīligenter , <i>diligently</i> .
nōbilis	nōbill	nōbiliter , <i>nobly</i> .

NOTE. — The adverb corresponding to **audāx** is **audācter**, *boldly*.

140. The neuter accusative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb.

The neuter ablative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb.

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus	multum , <i>much</i> .
facilis	facile , <i>easily</i> .
primus	primō , <i>at first</i> .

141.

*Vocabulary.***subitus, -a, -um, sudden.****subitō, suddenly.****fēliciter, successfully.****fidēliter, faithfully.****fortiter, bravely.****properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to hasten.****Scipiō, -ōnis, m., Scipio.****celeriter, swiftly.****laetē, gladly.****ācriter, sharply, severely.****longē, far.****lātē, widely.****graviter, severely, heavily.**

142.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Scipiō cum Poenīs fortiter pūgnāvit. 2. Caesar cum primā legiōne celeriter in Ītaliā properāvit. 3. Subitō Caesar cum celeritātē in Ītaliā properāvit. 4. Laetē et diligenter discipulī magistrō labōrāvērunt. 5. Caesar cum ducibus Gallōrum fēliciter pūgnāvit et eōs in bellō superāvit. 6. Primō militēs facile pūgnāvērunt, sed postēā multum labōrāvērunt. 7. Malus pirāta ācriter castigātus est. 8. Benignus agricola miserum servum nōbilitē mūnerāvit. 9. Militēs, qui audācter pūgnant, sunt nōn semper fortissimī.

II. 1. Scipio was diligently educated by his father and his mother. 2. The Roman legions fought bravely with the soldiers of Hannibal who had many elephants. 3. Those who labor faithfully shall be praised. 4. The fields of the enemy were large; the Romans devastated them far and wide. 5. Our soldiers were brave; in all battles they fought skilfully. 6. The soldiers of the enemy fought badly; many of them were severely wounded. 7. Then suddenly and swiftly they hastened into their own country. 8. The horsemen of hither Gaul were severely blamed by the commander. 9. Many of the enemy were killed in battle, more were wounded.

LESSON XLIV.

Comparison of Adverbs.

143. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative is formed by changing the final -o of the stem of the adjective in the superlative to -ē.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ācritē , <i>sharply.</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile , <i>easily.</i>	facilius	facillimē
prūdentē , <i>prudently.</i>	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
pulchrē , <i>beautifully.</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē

NOTE. — Adverbs are irregularly derived from irregular adjectives; but the comparative and the superlative are formed according to the rule stated above.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bene , <i>well.</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>ill.</i>	pēius	pessimē
... , <i>greatly.</i>	magis , <i>more</i>	māximē , <i>especially.</i>
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parvē , <i>little.</i>	minus	minimē

144.*Vocabulary.*

et ... et (conj.), <i>both ... and.</i>	cārē , <i>dearly.</i>
rēgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to rule.</i>	diūtius , <i>for a longer time.</i>
ācritūdō , -inis, f., <i>sharpness.</i>	diutissimē , <i>for a very long time.</i>
imperium , -ī, n., <i>supreme power.</i>	Hibernia , -ae, f., <i>Ireland.</i>
coniūrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to conspire.</i>	contrā (prep. with acc.), <i>against.</i>
dīmīdium , -ī, n., <i>half.</i>	tamen (adv.), <i>nevertheless.</i>

145.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Epistulae tuae magis dēlectant mātrem meam quam patrem. 2. Carmina Homēri et senēs et iuvenēs māximē dēlectant. 3. Carthāginiēnsēs fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, tamen ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt. 4. Somnus aegrum hominem magis recreat quam cibus. 5. Magister pigrōs discipulōs gravissimē vituperāvit et castigāvit. 6. Peditēs nostrī fortius pūgnāvērunt quam equitēs. 7. Servī Āfricae bene labōrāvērunt; servī Asiae melius labōrāvērunt; sed liberī virī Eurōpae optimē labōrāvērunt. 8. Victōria, rēgina, prūdētissimē rēgnāvit, multō melius quam multī rēgēs Rōmae. 9. Pigrī puerī parvē labōrāverant, sed pater eis pulcherrima dōna dedit.

II. 1. The children were very dearly loved by their parents, especially on account of their shrewdness. 2. For a long time consuls ruled in the Roman state; for a longer time kings ruled; for a very long time supremacy was held by emperors. 3. Ireland is smaller by a half than Britain. 4. The worst citizens conspire against the state, but they are often severely punished. 5. The better part of man is immortal. 6. The little boy told the story rather well. 7. The Greeks loved their country more than the Romans loved their native land. 8. What is a worse enemy of man than death? 9. They fought more successfully at daybreak than at night.

LESSON XLV.

Fourth Declension.

146. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *-us* and *-ū*; the stem ends in *-u* generally weakened to *-i* before *-bus*. Those having the nominative in *-us* are masculine with a few exceptions, those in *-ū* are neuter.

147. Nouns of the fourth declension are declined as follows:—

fructus, -ūs, m., <i>fruit</i> ; stem fructu-		cornū, -ūs, n., <i>horn, flank</i> ; stem cornu-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
G. fructūs	fructuum	cornūs	cornuum
D. fructui, -ī	fructibus	cornū	cornibus
A. fructum	fructūs	cornū	cornua
V. fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
A. fructū	fructibus	cornū	cornibus

NOTE.—The following retain the regular dative and ablative plural in *-ubus*: *artus, joint*; *partus, birth*; *portus, harbor*; *tribus, tribe*; *verū, a spit*; also dissyllables in *-cus*.

148. *Domus, f., house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension, and is inflected as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. dom-us	dom-ūs
G. dom-ūs	dom-uum, -ōrum
D. dom-ui, -ō	dom-ibus
A. dom-um	dom-ōs, -ūs
V. dom-us	dom-ūs
A. dom-ō, -ī	dom-ibus

149.

*Vocabulary.***exercitus, -ūs, m., army.****metus, -ūs, m., fear.****cantus, -ūs, m., song.****auctus, -ūs, m., growth.****genū, -ūs, n., knee.****anguis, -is, m. and f., snake.****cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to sing.****manus, -ūs, f., hand, band.****senātus, -ūs, m., senate.****peditātus, -ūs, m., infantry.****equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.****auctōritās, -ātis, f., authority.****Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus.****lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, to lie hidden.****propter (prep. with acc.), on account of.**

150.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Urbs māgna Ītaliae in metū erat propter Catilinam.
 2. Fuitne exercitus Caesaris multō māior quam exercitus Ariovistī? 3. Avēs cantū suō aurēs hominum dēlectant.
 4. Quod animal plūrēs artūs habet quam anguis? 5. Multae nāvēs in portū nostrō sunt, sed plūrēs Britanniae in portubus sunt. 6. In cantū Vergilius poēta cantat, "Frigidus latet anguis in herbā." 7. Fructūs arborum dulcēs omnibus puerīs gratī aestāte sunt. 8. Peditēs exercitūs Rōmānī cornū sinistrum Gallōrum superāvērunt, equitēs Rōmānōrum cornū Gallōrum dextrum fugāvērunt. 9. Milītēs Caesaris manūs hostium māgnās vidērunt.

II. 1. Horsemen are in the cavalry; foot-soldiers are in the infantry. 2. Julius Caesar, that famous commander, had large bands of soldiers. 3. With his strong hands, the farmer labors diligently. 4. Many large animals fight with their horns. 5. The senate of the Romans was a body of old and wise men. 6. Great was the authority of Cicero in

the Roman senate. 7. The growth of large trees is not very rapid. 8. The men of that German tribe dwelt in large houses. 9. Hands, feet, and knees are parts of the body.



LESSON XLVI.

Fifth Declension.

151. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ēs*, and the stem ends in *-ē*. All nouns of this declension are feminine with the exception of *diēs*, which is always masculine in the plural, and generally in the singular. The *ē* of the stem is shortened in the genitive and dative singular when preceded by a consonant.

152. Nouns of the fifth declension are declined as follows : —

<i>diēs, -ēī, m., day ;</i> stem <i>diē-</i>		<i>rēs, reī, f., thing, affair ;</i> stem <i>rē-</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
G. <i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
D. <i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
A. <i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
V. <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
A. <i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

NOTE. — Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

153.

Vocabulary.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle*.

planitiēs, -ēī, f.,

planiciēs, -ēī, f., } *plain*.

planitia, -ae, f., }

spēs, -ei, f., *hope*.perniciēs, -ēī, f., *destruction*.civīlis, -e, *civil* (of a state).perniciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*.fidēs, -ei, f., *faith*.rēs pūblica, f., *republic*.merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *noon*.salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.Miltiades, -is, m., *Miltiades*.initium, n., *beginning*.certus, -a, -um, *certain*.medius, -a, -um, *middle*.

154.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Bella civīlia rei pūblīcae Rōmānōrum perniciōsa fuērunt. 2. Fortitūdō Germānōrum legiōnum Rōmānōrum perniciēs fuit. 3. Aestāte diēs multō longiōrēs sunt quam hieme. 4. Spēs salūtis animōs Germānōrum complēvit gaudiō. 5. In dextrō aciēi Rōmānae cornū erant equitēs sociōrum. 6. Initiō diēi mediā in aciē Persae, sed in cornibus aciēi Graeci victōrēs fuērunt; merīdiē victōria Graecōrum certa erat. 7. Prūdētia Miltiadis et fortitūdō militum rem pūblicam ā perniciē servāvit. 8. Germāni fidē et probitāte multās gentēs superābant. 9. In Helvētiā sunt nōn māgnae planitiēs.

II. 1. The beginnings of many things are small. 2. The Roman senate praised the faith of the allies. 3. The Roman republic was ruled by the senate and the consuls. 4. The smallest things often have been the cause of the severest wars. 5. The brave leader holds a long sword in his right hand. 6. The brave general Miltiades formed a battle line

on the plain with cavalry and infantry. 7. The increase of the fire frightened the inhabitants of the city. 8. The homes of great men are not always filled with joy. 9. Who tells the story about the birth of Romulus?

LESSON XLVII.

Personal Pronouns.

155. In Latin there is a simple personal pronoun of the first person, one of the second, but none of the third. The nominative of the personal pronouns is not expressed except for emphasis or contrast.

The place of the personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstratives.

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:—

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G. meī	nostrūm, nostrī	tuī	vestrūm, vestrī
D. mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
A. mē	nōs	tē	vōs
A. mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

NOTE.—**Nostrūm** and **vestrūm** are chiefly used as partitive genitives.

156. The simple personal pronouns of the first and second persons are also used as reflexives, but there is a special reflexive form for the third person, which is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. ———	———
G. suī	suī
D. sibi	sibi
A. sē, sēsēs	sēs, sēsēs
A. sēs, sēsēs	sēs, sēsēs

NOTE. — When the preposition **cum** is used with the simple personal and reflexive pronouns, it is always an enclitic.

157. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Epistula tua, frāter, mihi māgnam voluptātem dabat. 2. Multī nostrūm fēlicēs sunt, multī vestrūm infēlicēs. 3. Ego sum poēta, tū es rēx, is est sacerdos. 4. Nihil tibi cārius est quam patria. 5. Vitae fēminārum et liberōrum ā vōbīs servātae sunt. 6. Dedimus laudem vōbīs et eis celebritāte. 7. Ego mē castīgō; tū tē laudās. 8. Amicus nōs ad sē vocāvit. 9. Frāter poētae nōbīscum in Graeciā fuit.

II. 1. In you and me and in all of us there are immortal souls. 2. You are Greeks; I am a Roman citizen. 3. The poet will not praise him. 4. You have refreshed us with food. 5. The soul, the better part of myself, is immortal; the body is mortal. 6. The teacher has praised you and me, for we have been diligent. 7. The farmer praises himself, but I do not praise him. 8. O leader, the lives of the soldiers have been saved by you. 9. The story of the Punic war is known to us all.

LESSON XLVIII.

Review in Vocabulary.

158. The following vocabulary contains all the new words introduced since Lesson XXXII. These words should be studied with great care ; the English equivalents should be learned, and the spelling and the quantity of vowels should be mastered.

159.*Word List.*

ācer	cantus	diēs	Fēlix
aciēs	cārē	difficilior	fēlix
ācriter	Carthāgō	diligenter	ferrum
ācritūdō	celeber	dīmidium	fertilis
admīrābilis	celer	dissimilis	fidēlis
Alexander	celeritās	diūtius	fidēlīter
ambulō	celeriter	doceō	fidēs
anguis	certus	domus	firmus
Ariovistus	citerior	dulcis	flōreō
artus	civilis	ego	folium
asinus	clārē	ēgregius	fortior
auctōritās	cognōmen	epistula	fortiter
auctus	collis	equester	forum
augeō	commūnis	equitātus	frīgidus
audāx	compleō	exemplum	fructus
avārus	coniūrō	exercitus	gaudeō
bene	contineō	exterior	genū
brevis	contrā	facile	gracilis
calidus	cornū	facilis	Graecus
candidus	dēfatīgō	fames	grāmen
cantō	deleō	fēliciter	

gravis	melior	planitiēs	signifer
graviter	meridiēs	plūs	simillimē
habeō	metus	portus	Sōcratēs
Helvētia	Miltiades	posterus	spēs
Helvētius	minor	potēns	subitō
Hibernia	miserē	pretiōsus	subitus
hiemō	moneō	primō	suī
humilis	mortālis	prior	Sulla
iaceō	multum	prope	superior
immortālis	nātū	properō	tamen
imperium	nihil	propter	teneō
improbus	nōbilis	proximus	Tiberis
imprūdēns	nōbiliter	prūdēns	Tīcīnus
infēlix	numerus	pudor	trāns
inferus	nunquam	Pūnicus	tribus
ingēns	omnis	quam	trīgintā
initium	opus	quattuor	Trōia
innocēns	ōrātiō	regiō	tū
intrā	Padus	rēgnō	ulterior
iunior	partus	rēs	ūtilis
iuvenis	pāx	rēs pūblica	ūva
laetē	peditātus	Rhodanus	verbum
lātē	pēior	rūsticus	verū
lateō	pensum	salūbris	vester
lātus	periculōsus	salūs	vetus
leō	perniciēs	sāctus	vetustior
lugeō	perniciōsus	sapiēns	videō
lupus	pius	Scīpiō	violō
māior	planiciēs	senātus	viridis
manus	planitia	senior	vulpēs
medius			

LESSON XLIX.

Possessive Adjectives.

160. The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of simple personal and reflexive pronouns. They are sometimes used as pronouns. They are adjectives of the first and second declensions. The gender, number, and case of these adjectives are determined by the thing possessed. These adjectives are as follows:—

SINGULAR OWNERSHIP.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
meus , -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	mei , -ae, -a
tuus , -a, -um, <i>thy, your</i> .	tui , -ae, -a
suus , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i> .	sui , -ae, -a

PLURAL OWNERSHIP.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
noster , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	nostrī , -ae, -a
vester , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .	vestrī , -ae, -a
suus , -a, -um, <i>their</i> .	sui , -ae, -a

NOTES.—*a.* When these words are used as pronouns they are translated: *mine, thine, his, ours*, etc.

b. The vocative of **meus**, in the masculine singular, is **mī**.

c. Review paragraphs 40 and 41.

161.*Vocabulary.*

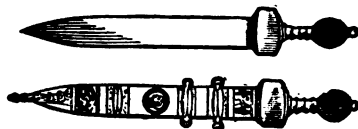
onus , -eris, n., <i>load, burden</i> .	ōra , -ae, f., <i>coast</i> .
oculus , -ī, m., <i>eye</i> .	latebra , -ae, f., <i>hiding-place</i> .
errō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to err</i> .	crux , crucis, f., <i>cross</i> .
cultus , -ūs, m., <i>culture</i> .	cymba , -ae, f., <i>skiff, small boat</i> .
alligō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to tie to</i> .	pōpulus , -ī, f., <i>poplar tree</i> .

162.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Amīcus meus vir probus est. 2. Magister laudat filium tuum; vituperat meum. 3. Terra nostra nunquam prōvincia Rōmāna fuit, vestram Rōmāni occupāvērunt. 4. Mī fili, cūr nōn amās magistrum tuum? 5. Onus suum est gravius quam tuum. 6. Ōrae vestrae semper latebrae pirātārum fuērunt. 7. Mī amīce, cūr nōn fuisti attentus? 8. Rēx Graecōrum cum cōpiīs suis castra Persārum oppugnāvit. 9. Incolae īnsulae nostrae mox erunt perītī nautae.

II. 1. I have seen the enemy with my own eyes. 2. Very many of our soldiers have been killed because the general erred. 3. My books contain many beautiful stories about the cross. 4. Our culture is known to all the peoples of Europe. 5. The sailors praised our skiff, which was tied to a high tree on the bank of the river. 6. The inhabitants of the island will be their allies. 7. In the first Punic war the army of the Roman people was routed by the Carthaginians. 8. The high poplars which are in your garden are very beautiful. 9. The people of Greece in our time are not noted on account of their wisdom and culture.

*Gladii.*

LESSON L.

Locative Case.

163. The place *where* is denoted by the ablative with the preposition *in* (locative ablative). But names of towns and small islands, and a few other nouns, are put in the locative case.

The locative has the following endings in the several declensions:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First declension	-ae	-is
Second declension	-i	-is
Third declension	-i (-e)	-ibus

NOTE.—Observe that the locative in the first and the second declension singular has the same form as the genitive; in the plural and in the third declension it has the same form as the dative or the ablative.

164.

Vocabulary.

rūs, rūris (loc., rūrī), n., <i>the country</i> (opposed to the city).	Athēnae, -ārum , f. (plu.), <i>Athens.</i>
mīlitia, -ae (loc. mīlitiae), f., <i>the field of battle.</i>	Delphī, -ōrum , f. (plu.), <i>Delphi.</i>
domus, -ūs (loc. domī), f., <i>home.</i>	Zama, -ae , f., <i>Zama.</i>
humus, -i (loc. humī), f., <i>the ground.</i>	Ephesus, -i , f., <i>Ephesus.</i>
-que (enclitic), <i>and.</i>	Apollo, -inis , m., <i>Apollo.</i>
	Athēniēnsis, -is , m., <i>Athenian.</i>
	orāculum, -i , n., <i>oracle.</i>

165.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Hieme rēx in urbe, aestāte rūri habitat. 2. Athēnīs in Graeciā erant multa et pulchra templa deōrum. 3. Delphis Apollinis orāculum fuit. 4. Dux cōpiarum Rōmānōrum militiae necātus est. 5. Zama fuit urbs Āfricae; Zamae pūgnātum est. 6. Ephesī, urbe Asiae, erat celeberrimum templum Diānae. 7. Post pūgnam multa corpora hominum et equōrum humi iacēbant. 8. Athēniēnsēs domi militiae-que clārissimī fuērunt. 9. Rēx Rōmae in pulchrō aedificiō Rōmae habitābat.

II. 1. Hannibal, who lived at Carthage, fought with the Romans. 2. Caesar and Scipio were famous both at home and on the field of battle. 3. In Rome, a city of Italy, there were many temples of the gods. 4. The arts and sciences flourished at Athens, for Greece was famous on account of wisdom and culture. 5. My friend, why are you lying on the ground? 6. Where is your brother? I have not seen him for a long time. 7. He has been sick; he is at home, at Rome. 8. In the country, in the summer, there are beautiful green trees. 9. In ancient times, many men were advised by the oracle which was at Delphi.

*Ancora.*

LESSON LI.

Constructions of Place.

166. RULES.—a. *The place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with a preposition, ā, ab, dē, ē, or ex; but names of towns and small islands, also domus and rūs, omit the preposition.*

b. *The place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition ad or in; but names of towns and small islands, also domus and rūs, omit the preposition.*

EXAMPLES:—

a. *Ā Gallā nāvigāvit.*

He sailed away from Gaul.

c. *In Ītaliā properāvit.*

He hastened into Italy.

b. *Rōmā properāvit.*

*He hastened away from
Rome.*

d. *Rōmam nāvigāvit.*

He sailed to Rome.

167.*Vocabulary.*

ē or ex (prep. with abl.), from.

dē (prep. with abl.), from.

*exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
await, to expect.*

*dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
go away.*

*adventus, -ūs, m., arrival,
approach.*

*līgātus, -ī, m., ambassador,
lieutenant.*

ā or ab (prep. with abl.), from.

ad (prep. with acc.), to, toward.

*nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
sail.*

*iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, to
aid.*

*rēs frūmentāria, f., grain
supply.*

comes, -itis, m., comrade.

Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta.

168.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Lēgātī Athēniēnsium Spartam properāvērunt. 2. Rēs frūmentāriāe in urbem portātae sunt ; nam incolae adventum militum expectābant. 3. Mercūrius Jomō Iovis Athēnās in templum volāvit. 4. Mī amice, ambulābisne ex urbe in silvam? 5. Hannibal, quī fuit dux Poenōrum, Carthāgine in Hispāniam properāvit. 6. Comitēs, post pūgnam domum nāvīgābimus. 7. Puellae puerīque ex urbe rūs ambulābunt. 8. Agricola, quī Athēnīs sacerdotem necāvit, rūs properāvit. 9. Militēs, quī in urbem vocātī erant, hominēs celerrimē iūvērunt.

II. 1. Arms were carried into the town by the soldiers. 2. The inhabitants, whose town had been taken by storm, departed into the country. 3. Many ships sailed from Europe to Africa, and from Africa to Asia. 4. I have not conspired with the Greeks at Athens. 5. In winter, birds fly to warm countries. 6. Who see from the high mountains into the city which lies in the plain? 7. Within ten days, Caesar will hasten to Gaul. 8. What ship brought back the greatest number of slaves from Africa to Rome? 9. The sick soldiers were carried from the ship by their comrades.



Pharetra cum Sagittis.

LESSON LII.

The Demonstratives *iste, ipse, Idem.*

169. The demonstrative *iste, that, that of yours*, is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
G. <i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
D. <i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
A. <i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
A. <i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

NOTE.—*Iste* is used in reference to that which is related to the person being addressed, and for that reason is called the demonstrative of the second person. It is also used to express contempt.

EXAMPLE:—

Iste amicus patrem necāvit!

That friend of yours has killed his father!

170. The demonstrative *ipse, himself, herself*, etc., is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
A. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
A. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

NOTE. — **Ipse**, *himself*, the emphatic appositive pronoun, is used with a noun or pronoun (even though understood) with which it agrees as does an adjective. It also means *very* in the sense of *real* or *true*.

EXAMPLE: —

Caesar ipse fuit dux exercitūs.

Caesar himself was the leader of the army.

171. The demonstrative **īdem**, *same*, is declined as follows: —

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. īdem	eadem	īdem
G. īiusdem	īiusdem	īiusdem
D. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
A. eundem	eandem	īdem
A. eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G. eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
A. eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A. eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

NOTE. — The inflected part of **īdem** is declined like **is**, **m** before **d** changing to **n**.

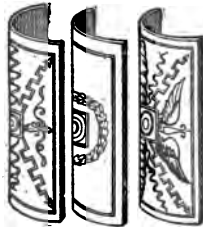
Review paragraph **63** for double forms in the plural.

172. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Omnium civitātum lēgēs nōn eadem sunt. 2. Carthāgō et Corinthus eōdem annō ā Rōmānīs expūgnātae sunt.

3. Iste liber, quem dedistī mihi, est grātissimus. 4. Fābula illā nocte ā rēge ipsō narrāta est. 5. Cui istum flōrem donābis, mī fili? 6. Istī amīcī sunt filiī mīlitum ipsōrum. 7. Rōmānī ipsī, quōrum fortitūdō māgna erat, omnēs Ītalīae gentēs superāvērunt. 8. Ā quibus exercitus Persārum fugātus est? Ā Graecīs ipsīs. 9. Īdem hominēs eadem opera saepe laudant et vituperant. 10. Hominēs sapientēs sē ipsī nōn laudant.

II. 1. The man of whom you told the story praised himself. 2. The poet himself praised the farmer ; for he had many good books. 3. The wisdom of that son of yours is most admirable. 4. Did the peoples of Greece and Rome have the same gods? 5. Jupiter himself was the king of all the gods of the Romans and of the Greeks. 6. Many men do not rejoice about the same things on the same day. 7. I have been aided by that son of yours. 8. I have given my best gift to that unrighteous man. 9. Those women have had joy and sorrow on the same day. 10. The man loves himself and all men.



Scūta.

LESSON LIII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

173. The following pronouns are known as indefinites and are used as their English equivalents:—

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid , <i>some, any.</i>
quidam	quaedam	quiddam , <i>a, a certain.</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque , <i>every, each.</i>
quivis	quaevis	quidvis , <i>any (you please).</i>
quisquam	quaequam	quidquam , <i>any one.</i>
quispiam	quaepiam	quidpiam , <i>any one, anybody.</i>
quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet , <i>any (you please).</i>
quis	qua, quae	quid , <i>some, any.</i>

174. *Aliquis, some, any*, is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid
G. alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
D. alicui	alicui	alicui
A. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid
A. aliquo	aliqua	aliquo
PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
A. aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
A. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Quīdam, *a*, *a certain*, is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
G. cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
A. quendam	quandam	quiddam
A. quōdam	quādam	quōdam
PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
A. quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
A. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

NOTES.—*a*. All the indefinites are declined like **aliquis** or **quīdam**, some having the first part inflected, and others, the last part.

b. There are two forms in the nominative and accusative singular neuter. See paragraph 66, note *b*.

c. A superlative adjective may be placed before **quisque**: **optimus quisque**, *every best*, i.e. *the best*.

175. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Graecia parvum quendam locum Eurōpae tenet.
 2. Fortissimum quemque imperātor ad sē vocāvit. 3. Sibi quisque cārus est. 4. Pessimus quisque socius et amīcus Catilinae fuit. 5. Sunt bēstiae quaedam, in quibus est aliquid virtūtī simile. 6. "Suum cuīque," verbum est viri

probī et iūstī. 7. Quīdam primā lūce ad castra nostra ambulāvit. 8. Catilīna in senātū est, videt oculis quemque nostrū. 9. Quisque homō est dominus suae fōrtūnae.

II. 1. In certain parts of Italy were large forests. 2. The bravest shall be our leaders. 3. Every one loves his own country. 4. The farmer gave some money to his son. 5. The poet gave books to a certain one of his daughters. 6. Life is dear to each one of us. 7. My son has given that book of yours to some one. 8. Many of the enemy's soldiers fought bravely; some of them were severely wounded. 9. Our soldiers were skilful; in every battle they fought successfully.

. LESSON LIV.

Pronominal Adjectives.

176. The following words, like their English equivalents, are sometimes used as adjectives and sometimes as pronouns. They are declined like *ipse, ille, or iste*. See paragraph 170.

alius, -a, -ud, another.

neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.

quīlibet, -a, -um, any.

uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two).

alter, -era, -erum, the other.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each, both.

177. Some of these words when used as correlatives have special meanings. As follows:—

alius . . . alius, one . . . another.

alif . . . alif, some . . . others.

alius . . . aliud, one, one thing . . . another, another.

alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

EXAMPLE: —

Dē immortālibus deīs alius poēta aliud nārrat.

*Concerning the immortal gods one poet tells one thing;
another; another.*

178. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Caesar erat sōlus imperātor exercitūs. 2. Utrius fortitūdō māior fuit, Hannibalis an (*or*) Scipiōnis? Uterque fortissimus fuit. 3. Rēx māgna dōna neutri filiōrum dedit. 4. Ille improbus vir est amīcus nullius. 5. Victōria ūna erat rēgīna tōtius Britanniae. 6. Alterī militi dux gladium dedit, alterī hastam. 7. Amīcus noster est poēta; alter vir, quem vidēmus, est miles. 8. Cōsulēs Rōmae rēgnant; in aliis terris rēgēs rēgnant. 9. Vergilius fuit clārus poēta, Cincinnātus fuit māgnus dux; uterque fuit bonus vir.

II. 1. Some men love themselves more than their friends; others love the gods best. 2. Our country is free; in no other country is there liberty. 3. Europe and Africa are large countries; in both are large rivers. 4. At one time Athens was the largest city in Europe; at another time, Rome. 5. The king gave praise to the whole people on account of bravery alone. 6. Which poet was the greater, Vergil or Homer? 7. One man is not an army; one ship is not a fleet. 8. Much money gives pleasure to no one. 9. Some (not none) cities are larger than Rome, but none are more beautiful.

LESSON LV.

Cardinal Numerals.

179. Cardinal numbers are the numbers used in counting.

1. <i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um,	I.	28. <i>duodētrīgintā</i> , XXVIII.
2. <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> ,	II.	29. <i>undētrīgintā</i> , XXIX.
3. <i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> ,	III.	30. <i>trīgintā</i> , XXX.
4. <i>quattuor</i> ,	IV.	40. <i>quadrāgintā</i> , XL.
5. <i>quīnque</i> ,	V.	50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i> , L.
6. <i>sex</i> ,	VI.	60. <i>sexāgintā</i> , LX.
7. <i>septem</i> ,	VII.	70. <i>septuāgintā</i> , LXX.
8. <i>octō</i> ,	VIII.	80. <i>octōgintā</i> , LXXX.
9. <i>novem</i> ,	IX.	90. <i>nōnāgintā</i> , XC.
10. <i>decem</i> ,	X.	100. <i>centum</i> , C.
11. <i>undecim</i> ,	XI.	101. <i>centum ūnus</i> , CI.
12. <i>duodecim</i> ,	XII.	200. <i>ducentī</i> , -ae, -a, CC.
13. <i>tredecim</i> ,	XIII.	300. <i>trecentī</i> , CCC.
14. <i>quattuordecim</i> ,	XIV.	400. <i>quadrīngentī</i> , CCCC.
15. <i>quīndecim</i> ,	XV.	500. <i>quīngentī</i> , D.
16. <i>sēdecim</i> ,	XVI.	600. <i>sexcentī</i> , DC.
17. <i>septendecim</i> ,	XVII.	700. <i>septīngentī</i> , DCC.
18. <i>duodēvīgintī</i> ,	XVIII.	800. <i>octīngentī</i> , DCCC.
19. <i>undēvīgintī</i> ,	XIX.	900. <i>nōngentī</i> , DCCCC.
20. <i>vīgintī</i> ,	XX.	1000. <i>mille</i> , M.
21. { <i>vīgintī ūnus</i> ,		5000. <i>quīnque mīlia</i> , Iᵒᵒ.
{ <i>ūnus et vīgintī</i> ,	XXI.	10000. <i>decem mīlia</i> , CCIᵒᵒ.
		100000. <i>centum mīlia</i> , CCCIᵒᵒᵒ.

180. The numerals *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined when standing alone and also when combined with other numbers, as *vīgintī ūnus*, *centum ūnus*, etc. The other cardinal num-

bers up to two hundred are indeclinable. The hundreds, **centum** not included, are declined like the plural of **bonus**, -a, -um. **Mille** is, in the singular, an indeclinable adjective. In the plural, it is used as a neuter noun with the partitive genitive.

181. **Ūnus** is declined like the singular of **ipse**; see paragraph 169. **Trēs** is declined like the plural of **acer**; see paragraph 106. **Duo** and **mille** are declined as follows:—

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. duo	duae	duo	mille	mīlia
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus
A. duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
A. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus

182.*Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Graeci Trōiam decem annōs oppugnāvērunt. 2. In illō proeliō centum duodēvīgintī equitēs vulnerātī sunt, trīgintā ūnus equitēs necātī sunt. 3. Caesar duābus legiōnibus nova arma dōnāvit. 4. In castris mille peditēs et ducentī equitēs fuērunt. 5. Ūnus annus duodecim mēnsēs, trecentōs sexāgintā quīnque diēs habet. 6. In illā pūgnā decem mīlia Rōmānōrum cum quattuordecim mīlibus Gallōrum pūgnāvērunt. 7. Hominēs trium māgnārum terrārum, Eurōpae, Asiae, Āfricae, sunt dissimillimī. 8. Habitantē septuāgintā quīnque mīlia hominum Rōmae? 9. In portū erat classis ūndēquadrāgintā nāvium.

II. 1. The temple of Diana was four hundred and fifty feet long and two hundred and twenty feet wide. 2. A

great tempest has destroyed twenty-four ships. 3. The names of the seven Roman kings are not known to all pupils. 4. Twelve great emperors ruled at Rome. 5. A year has more than three hundred days. 6. Three Roman legions were destroyed by the Germans. 7. There were three Punic wars. 8. In ancient times there were seven wise men whose names were famous. 9. A good man gave money to one hundred and twenty slaves.

LESSON LVI.

Ordinal Numerals.

183. Ordinal numerals are adjectives derived from the cardinals to express order or place. They are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; see paragraphs 41 and 48.

1st. <i>prīmus</i> , -a, -um.	17th. <i>septīmus decimus</i> .
2d. <i>secundus</i> (or <i>alter</i>).	18th. <i>duodēvicēsīmus</i> .
3d. <i>tertius</i> .	19th. <i>undēvicēsīmus</i> .
4th. <i>quartus</i> .	20th. <i>vicēsīmus</i> .
5th. <i>quīntus</i> .	21st. { <i>vicēsīmus prīmus</i> .
6th. <i>sextus</i> .	{ <i>ūnus et vicēsīmus</i> .
7th. <i>septīmus</i> .	22d. { <i>vicēsīmus secundus</i> .
8th. <i>octāvus</i> .	{ <i>alter et vicēsīmus</i> .
9th. <i>nōnus</i> .	29th. <i>undētrīcēsīmus</i> .
10th. <i>decimus</i> .	30th. <i>trīcēsīmus</i> .
11th. <i>undecimus</i> .	40th. <i>quadrāgēsīmus</i> .
12th. <i>duodecimus</i> .	100th. <i>centēsīmus</i> .
13th. <i>tertius decimus</i> .	101st. <i>centēsīmus prīmus</i> .
14th. <i>quartus decimus</i> .	200th. <i>ducentēsīmus</i> .
15th. <i>quīntus decimus</i> .	1000th. <i>millēsīmus</i> .
16th. <i>sextus decimus</i> .	2000th. <i>bis millēsīmus</i> .

184.

Vocabulary.

finis , -is, m., <i>end, border</i> ; (plu.) <i>territories</i> .	Solon , -ōnis, m., <i>Solon</i> .
Alpēs , -ium, f. (plu.), <i>Alps</i> .	Carthāginiēnsis , -e, <i>Carthaginian</i> .
bellō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to wage war</i> .	moveō , -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>to move</i> .
Nīlus , -ī, m., <i>Nile</i> .	passus , -ūs, m., <i>pace</i> .
sarcina , -ae, f., <i>personal baggage</i> .	mille passus , <i>a thousand paces, a mile</i> .
rēgnū , -ī, n., <i>supremacy, reign</i> .	mīlia passuum , <i>thousands of paces</i> .
bis (adv.), <i>twice</i> .	

185.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Solon ūnus et p̄rimus ex illis septem sapientibus fuit, quōrum nōmina antiquis temporibus clāra erant. 2. Annō septimō decimō secundi bellī Pūnici Carthāginiēnsēs Hannibalem ex Ītaliā vocāvērunt. 3. Diēs est trecentēsima sexāgēsima quinta pars annī. 4. Suntne Alpēs altissimi montēs, quōs vidisti? 5. Septem fuērunt rēgēs Rōmānī; p̄rimus fuit Rōmulus, septimus, Tarquinius Superbus. 6. Tertiō bellō Pūnicō Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne expūgnāta et dēlēta est. 7. Caesar, quī in finibus Gallōrum bellāvit, p̄rimus cōsul Rōmae nōn fuit. 8. Tertiō decimō diē castra mōvit. 9. Militibus legiōnis decimae, fortissimīs totius exercitūs, laudem dedit.

II. 1. The Nile is the fourth large river on which this man has sailed. 2. Romulus built a beautiful city twenty miles from the sea. 3. In the thirty years' war many cities of Germany were devastated. 4. Do not the soldiers of the ninth legion carry personal baggage on the march? 5. On

that day, the greatest part of the enemy was killed in battle. 6. In the twentieth year of the reign of Romulus there was a great fire in Rome. 7. In the third watch of the night, the soldiers hastened from the hill into the camp. 8. In his eightieth year, Cincinnatus was called from the field into the army. 9. In the arts, Greece was first ; Rome was first in laws.

LESSON LVII.

Two Uses of the Dative.

186. RULES. — a. *The dative is used with sum to denote the possessor.*

b. *The dative is sometimes used to express that of which a thing fills the place, and for which it serves.*

EXAMPLES: —

a. **Agricolae est filia.**

To the farmer is a daughter. (The farmer has a daughter.)

b. **Liberi nobis cūrae sunt.**

The children are for a care to us. (The children are a care to us.)

187.

Vocabulary.

medicus, -i, m., *physician*.

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use*.

vestītus, -ūs, m., *clothing*.

maritimus, -a, -um, *maritime*.

praemium, -i, n., *reward*.

impedimentum, -i, n., *hindrance*.

venēnum, -i, n., *poison*.

medicīna, -ae, f., *medicine*.

honor, -ōris, m., *honor*.

porta, -ae, f., *gate*.

imperītus, -a, -um, *unskilled*.

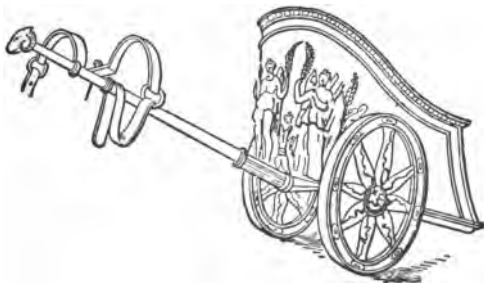
impedimenta, -ōrum, n. (plu.), *baggage*.

188.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Bonis hominibus sunt multi amici. 2. Classis militibus magnō ūsui fuit. 3. Medicus venēnum medicīnae nobis dat. 4. Grāmen vestitui terrae est. 5. Multus honor est fortī militi. 6. Dux māgnū exercitū habet. 7. Duci est māgnus exercitus. 8. Cuique maritimae nātiōi sunt multi portūs; cuique urbī, multae portae. 9. Liber, quem magister puerō dedit, fuit praemiō.

II. 1. The high mountains which we see are a protection to the town. 2. Those who are faithful have faithful friends. 3. The leader, to whom there was great fame, took by storm many beautiful towns. 4. The river was a way to the enemy who had many boats. 5. The bridge was a protection to the town. 6. The unskilled legion was a guard to the baggage. 7. The death of the skilful leader was a care to Caesar. 8. The farmer's daughters give money to the poor girl for a reward. 9. The Romans had large fleets for a protection to their harbors.

*Currus.*

LESSON LVIII.

The Third Conjugation.

189. All verbs whose stem ends in *ĕ* are classed under the third conjugation.

NOTE.—Let paragraph 53 be reviewed.

190. Learn the indicative, active and passive, of *regĕre*, to rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *regō*, *regĕre*, *rēxī*, *rēctus*.

		INDICATIVE.	
		Active.	Passive.
		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>regō</i>	<i>regimus</i>	<i>regor</i>	<i>regimur</i>
2. <i>regis</i>	<i>regitis</i>	<i>regeris, -re</i>	<i>regimini</i>
3. <i>regit</i>	<i>regunt</i>	<i>regitur</i>	<i>reguntur</i>
		IMPERFECT.	
1. <i>regēbam</i>	<i>regēbāmus</i>	<i>regēbar</i>	<i>regēbāmur</i>
2. <i>regēbās</i>	<i>regēbātis</i>	<i>regēbāris, -re</i>	<i>regēbāmini</i>
3. <i>regēbat</i>	<i>regēbant</i>	<i>regēbātur</i>	<i>regēbantur</i>
		FUTURE.	
1. <i>regam</i>	<i>regēmus</i>	<i>regar</i>	<i>regēmur</i>
2. <i>regēs</i>	<i>regētis</i>	<i>regēris, -re</i>	<i>regēmini</i>
3. <i>reget</i>	<i>regent</i>	<i>regētur</i>	<i>regentur</i>
		PERFECT.	
1. <i>rēxī</i>	<i>rēximus</i>	<i>rēctus, {</i>	<i>rēctī, {</i>
2. <i>rēxistī</i>	<i>rēxistis</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
3. <i>rēxit</i>	<i>rēxērunt, -ēre</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
		<i>-a, -um</i>	<i>-ae, -a</i>
		<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT.

1. rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus,	{ eram	rēctī,	{ erāmus
2. rēxerās	rēxerātis		{ erās		{ erātis
3. rēxerat	rēxerant	-a, -um	{ erat	-ae, -a	{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus,	{ erō	rēctī,	{ erimus
2. rēxeris	rēxeritis		{ eris		{ eritis
3. rēxerit	rēxerint	-a, -um	{ erit	-ae, -a	{ erunt

191.

Vocabulary.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, to do, to drive.	littera, -ae, f., letter.
contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, to hasten.	Instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūc- tus, to draw up.
dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsus, to divide.	mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, to send.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead.	scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, to write.
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, to wage.	trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, to draw.
vīnea, -ae, f., besieging shed.	prōditor, -ōris, m., betrayer.

192.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Litterās in Hispāniam mīsit. 2. Caesar legiōnēs novās in Galliam dūcit. 3. Populus Rōmānus cum gentibus Galliae bellum gerēbat. 4. Caesar epistulās ad senātōrēs saepe scripsit. 5. In hanc provinciam māgnis itineribus contendēbat. 6. Caesar aciem in mediō colle instrūxit. 7. Militēs prōditōrem in castra trāxērunt et lapidibus necāvērunt. 8. Dux vineās ad oppidum ēgit. 9. Tempore Caesaris omnis Gallia in partēs trēs divisa est.

II. 1. Caesar divided his army into two parts. 2. The brave commander led his soldiers across the Alps. 3. Three legions were sent against that town. 4. Our friend has written to us; brother, will you give me his letter? 5. What famous general boldly waged war in Gaul? 6. One half of the army had been destroyed by the enemy who were drawn up on the hill. 7. Caesar's army hastened into Gaul with the Roman eagle. 8. Horses drew the baggage through the forests into the enemy's country. 9. In ten days the general will have sent the betrayer to Rome.



LESSON LIX.

The Third Conjugation (*Continued*).

193. Verbs of the third conjugation in *-iō* retain the *i* of the present stem before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē*, but lose it elsewhere except in the future and in the participle and gerund.

194. Learn the indicative active and passive of *capere*, *to take*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*.

<i>Active.</i>		INDICATIVE.		<i>Passive.</i>	
		PRESENT.			
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. capiō	capimus	capior		capimur	
2. capis	capitis	caperis, -re		capimini	
3. capit	capiunt	capitur		capiuntur	

IMPERFECT.

1. capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
2. capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, -re	capiēbāmini
3. capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE.

1. capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
2. capies	capietis	capieris, -re	capiemini
3. capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT.

1. cēpī	cēpimus	captus, -a, -um	sum	captī, -ae, -a	sumus
2. cēpistī	cēpistis		es		estis
3. cēpit	cēperunt, -ēre		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

1. cēperam	cēperāmus	captus, -a, -um	eram	captī, -ae, -a	erāmus
2. cēperās	cēperātis		erās		erātis
3. cēperat	cēperant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. cēperō	cēperimus	captus, -a, -um	erō	captī, -ae, -a	erimus
2. cēperis	cēperitis		eris		eritis
3. cēperit	cēperint		erit		erunt

195.

Vocabulary.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, <i>to receive.</i>	capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, <i>to take.</i>
cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, <i>to know.</i>	cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, <i>to desire.</i> Aegyptus, -i, f., <i>Egypt.</i>
cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>to finish.</i>	Horātius Coclēs, -itis, m., <i>Horatius Cocles.</i>

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, to	pōns, pontis, m., bridge.
make, do.	vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, to
fugiō, -ere, fugī, —, to flee.	conquer.
incolō, -ere, -uī, —, to in-	iussus, -ūs, m., order, com-
habit.	mand.
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,	Pompēius, -ī, m., Pompey.
to kill.	cotīdiē (adv.), daily.

196.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit; id sine ūllō periculō fēcīt. 2. Hostēs nostrī, quī ā militibus superātī sunt, pācem cupiunt. 3. Pōns, quī ā Rōmānis in Tiberī factus erat, ab Horātiō Coclitē defensus est. 4. Cōsulēs cotīdiē epistulās ā Caesare accipiēbant. 5. Ea pars Galliae, quam Celtae incolunt, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. 6. Iussū cōsulīs interficiēris, Catilīna. 7. Pompēius, quī ā Caesare victus erat, in Aegyptum fugit. 8. Lēgātī, quī ā duce missī erant, ea, quae hostēs confēcērant, cōgnōvērunt. 9. Belgae ūnam partem Galliae incolunt.

II. 1. What did Horatius Cocles do in ancient times? 2. The army of Caesar made the greatest marches in Gaul. 3. The gold of the king, which was carried on the large ship, was taken by the pirates. 4. Caesar was killed at Rome by his enemies. 5. Daily, brave men flee from danger. 6. After the war with the Gauls, Caesar took many slaves to Rome. 7. The citizens killed the betrayer and freed the town. 8. By whom were the inhabitants of Egypt conquered? 9. The soldiers of the Roman people finished the war with great bravery.

LESSON LX.

The Fourth Conjugation.

197. All verbs with the present infinitive in *-ī* belong to the fourth conjugation. These verbs retain the *i* throughout the entire conjugation.

198. Learn the indicative active and passive of *audire*, to hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō*, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītus*.

<i>Active.</i>		INDICATIVE.		<i>Passive.</i>	
		PRESENT.			
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. audiō	audīmus	audior		audīmur	
2. audis	audītis	audiris, -re		audīmini	
3. audit	audiunt	audītur		audiuntur	
IMPERFECT.					
1. audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar		audiēbāmur	
2. audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, -re		audiēbāmini	
3. audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur		audiēbantur	
FUTURE.					
1. audiam	audiēmus	audiar		audiēmur	
2. audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, -re		audiēmini	
3. audiet	audient	audiētur		audientur	
PERFECT.					
1. audīvī	audīvimus	audītus,	sum	audītī,	sumus
2. audīvisti	audīvistis	-a, -um	es	-ae, -a	estis
3. audīvīt	audīverunt, -ēre		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus, -a, -um	{ eram erās erat	{ erāmus erātis erant
2. audīverās	audīverātis			
3. audīverat	audīverant			

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. audīverō	audīverimus	audītus, -a, -um	{ erō eris erit	{ erimus eritis erunt
2. audīveris	audīveritis			
3. audīverit	audīverint			

199.

*Vocabulary.*audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to hear.*custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to guard.*mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to fortify.*nesciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *not to know.*pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to punish.*captīvus, -ī, m., *captive.*magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistrate.*dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to sleep.*vinciō, -īre, -vī, -vinctus, *to bind.*veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come.*sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to know.*oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*Promētheus, -eī, m., *Prometheus.*rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff.*ōlim (adv.), *once, formerly.*

200.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Lēgēs bonae vītam cīvium custōdiunt. 2. Militēs verba ducis audīverunt. 3. Antīquīs temporibus oppida mūrīs mūniēbantur. 4. Improbī hominēs ā magistrātibus pūnientur; probī hominēs laudābuntur. 5. Multōrum oculi et aurēs tē custōdient, Catilina. 6. Cotidiē septem

hōrās dormiō. 7. Tū, Catilīna, oculis et auribus omnium bonōrum cīvium custōdiēris. 8. Scīmus nunc multās rēs, quās ōlim nesciēbāmus. 9. Promētheus, quī ignem mortālibus dedit, in rūpe vinctus est.

II. 1. By nothing is a state better fortified than by good laws. 2. I have come, I have seen, I have conquered. 3. Bad men do not do good works. 4. With the eyes, we see ; with the ears, we hear ; with the mind, we understand. 5. By command of the consul, the gates of the city were guarded by the soldiers, who were men of the greatest bravery. 6. The Romans conquered their enemies, and the captives were bound and taken to Rome. 7. Many animals sleep in winter. 8. By whose order had Prometheus been bound? 9. Jupiter, who was the king of gods and men, often came to the earth.



LESSON LXI.

The Dative with Verbs.

201. RULE.— *Most verbs signifying favor, help, believe, please, trust, and their opposites ; also command, obey, persuade, envy, pardon, spare, threaten, serve, resist, and the like, govern the dative.*

EXAMPLE:—

Caesar mulieribus et pueris pepercit.

Caesar spared the women and the children.

NOTE. — A few verbs almost synonymous with some of the above take the accusative. They are as follows: *iuvō*, *adiuvō*, *help*; *laedō*, *injure*; *iubeō*, *order*; *dēficiō*, *fail*; *dēlectō*, *please*.

202.

Vocabulary.

<i>cōnfidō</i> , -ere, -fīsus sum, <i>to trust</i> .	<i>parcō</i> , -ere, <i>pepercī</i> , <i>parsus</i> , <i>to spare</i> .
<i>crēdō</i> , -ere, <i>crēdidī</i> , <i>crēditus</i> , <i>to believe</i> .	<i>persuādeō</i> , -ēre, -sī, -suāsus, <i>to persuade</i> .
<i>faveō</i> , -ēre, <i>fāvī</i> , <i>fautus</i> , <i>to favor</i> .	<i>placeō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>to please</i> .
<i>noceō</i> , -ēre, <i>nocuī</i> , <i>nocitus</i> , <i>to injure</i> .	<i>resistō</i> , -ere, <i>restitī</i> , —, <i>to resist</i> .
<i>laedō</i> , -ere, <i>laesī</i> , <i>laesus</i> , <i>to injure</i> .	<i>pāreō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>to obey</i> .
<i>serviō</i> , -īre, -ivī, -ītus, <i>to serve</i> .	<i>dēficiō</i> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>to fail</i> .
<i>vērītās</i> , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , <i>truth</i> .	<i>parēns</i> , -entis, <i>m.</i> , <i>parent</i> .
<i>fīdē</i> (adv.), <i>faithfully</i> .	<i>umquam</i> (adv.), <i>ever</i> .
	<i>frīgus</i> , -oris, <i>n.</i> , <i>cold</i> .
	<i>vērus</i> , -a, -um, <i>true</i> .

203.

Exercises in Translation.

- I. 1. Dux militibus dixit, "Hostēs nōbīs nōn resistent." 2. Militēs ducī, qui vērā semper dixit, crēdidērunt. 3. Iūvēruntne vicinī Gallōrum eōs in bellis Rōmānis? 4. Laus mortālium deīs immortālibus placet. 5. Laus mortālium deīs immortālibus grāta est. 6. Bonī puerī parentibus, quōs cārē amant, pārent. 7. Ariovistus habuit multōs servōs, quī suō dominō fidissimē serviēbant. 8. Rēx Germānōrum, quī fuit probissimus vir, populō suō fāvit. 9. Cibus et frūmentum exercitum Caesaris dēfēcērunt.

II. 1. Once upon a time, a soldier who did not obey the commander was put to death. 2. Has truth ever injured any man? 3. Caesar gave his soldiers great rewards. 4. The sermon of the priest did not please the people who were in the temple. 5. The book which the poet wrote was not pleasing to us. 6. The general spared those whom he had conquered, and they served him faithfully for many years. 7. The cold of winter injures the trees of the forest. 8. The soldiers of the Persians resisted the Roman army with great bravery. 9. I do not believe you, my friend; the letter which was written by me pleased the queen of Britain.

LESSON LXII.

Deponent Verbs.

204. Deponent verbs are, for the most part, passive in form but active in meaning. They have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supine. They have the following passive meanings: always in the gerundive, and sometimes in the perfect passive participle. There are deponent verbs of all four conjugations, and they are conjugated like the passive forms of *amāre*, *monēre*, *regēre*, and *audire*. The passive infinitives of the four conjugations have the following terminations: first conjugation, *-ārī*; second conjugation, *-ēri*; third conjugation, *-ī*; fourth conjugation, *-īri*.

There are some verbs which are deponent only in the tenses formed on the perfect stem; these are called *semi-deponent verbs*.

205. RULE. — *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, govern the ablative case.*

EXAMPLE: —

Ūterisne libris tuis cum diligentia?
Do you use your books with diligence?

206.

Vocabulary.

<i>ŭtor, ŭti, ŭsus sum, to use.</i>	<i>admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, to admire.</i>
<i>abŭtor, -ŭti, -ŭsus sum, to abuse.</i>	<i>gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, to rejoice.</i>
<i>fruor, frui, fructus sum, to enjoy.</i>	<i>nāscor, -cī, nātus sum, to be born, to arise.</i>
<i>potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, to gain, to acquire.</i>	<i>polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, to promise.</i>
<i>fungor, fungi, fūctus sum, to perform.</i>	<i>laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to rejoice.</i>
<i>vescor, vescī, —, to eat.</i>	<i>morior, morī, mortuus sum, to die.</i>
<i>sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, to follow.</i>	<i>vitium, -ī, n., fault, vice.</i>
<i>proficīscor, -cī, -fectus sum, to set out, to advance.</i>	<i>impetus, -ūs, m., attack, assault.</i>

NOTE. — The principal parts of verbs in the passive voice or of deponent verbs are: the present indicative, the present infinitive, and the perfect indicative.

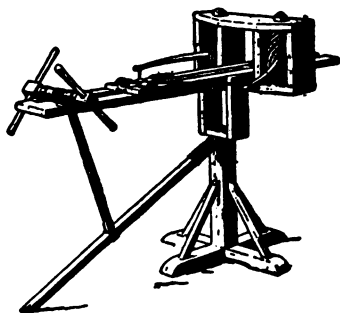
207.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Rōmānī ingentia Germānōrum corpora admīrābantur. 2. Catilīna, abŭsus es patientiā nostrā. 3. Pāce fruimus, nam multa bella gessimus. 4. Caesar hostēs secū-

tus est et eōrum oppidis potitus est. 5. Omnēs milītēs Rōmānī ex castris profecti sunt et in hostium castra impetum fēcērunt. 6. Agricola gāvīsus est dōnō, quod filius suus dedit. 7. Quō annō Caesar nātus est? 8. Omnia fēcistī, frāter, quae pollicitus erās. 9. Iūstitiā et probitāte tuā laetor.

II. 1. On the following day, Caesar set out for Gaul with two legions. 2. The allies of the famous general promised him a great number of ships. 3. No man is born, has been born, will be born, without faults. 4. Many of those who set out for war died for their country. 5. The enemy were conquered and put to flight, and the cavalry-men of the Romans followed them and killed many of them in flight. 6. The general will gain all Gaul within ten years. 7. Those who are just will always enjoy peace. 8. Good boys follow the example of upright men. 9. The pupils performed a difficult task for their teacher.



Tormentum.

LESSON LXIII.

Dative with Compounds.

208. RULES. — *With many verbs compounded with the prepositions, ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum, the dative is used.*

All compounds of sum (absum and possum excepted), are followed by the dative.

EXAMPLE. — *Caesar Aeduīs saepe adfuerat.*

Caesar had often assisted the Aedui.

209.*Vocabulary.*

absum, -esse, āfuī, to be distant.

adsum, -esse, affuī, to be near.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, to be lacking.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, to be among.

obsum, -esse, -fuī, to be against.

prōsum, -esse, -fuī, to be for, to benefit.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tus, to put in command.

praestō, -āre, -stitī, to excel.

succurrō, -ere, -rī, -cursus, to succor.

succumbō, -ere, -cubui, -bitus, to submit to.

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw upon, to cause.

obsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, to oppose.

Labienus, -ī, m., Labienus.

Decimus Brūtus, -ī, m., Decimus Brutus.

adulēscēns, -entis, a youth.

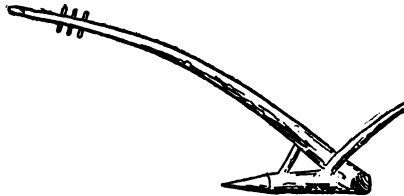
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.

210.*Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Caesar Decimum Brūtum adulēscēntem classī praeficit. 2. Decimus Brūtus omnibus nāvibus Rōmānōrum

praefuit. 3. Tū, Catilīna, mihi nōn es amīcus; nōnne obsistis mihi cotīdiē? 4. Nōnne decem milia passuum ab urbe absumus? 5. Puerī ad portam urbis aderunt. 6. Militēs multis proeliis interfuerunt et māgnam laudem accepērunt. 7. Virīs probīs amīcitia bonōrum hominum nōn dēerit. 8. Militēs Rōmānōrum hostibus virtūte praestitērunt. 9. Dux perītus praefuit exercitūi, qui Athēnīs superātus est.

II. 1. What famous orator opposed Catiline in the Roman senate? 2. Men benefit and injure men most. 3. Will he ever yield to his foes? 4. Hannibal put to flight the army of the Romans. 5. The camp of the Greeks was not far from the sea; the camp of the Persians was not far from the city. 6. The Greeks fought with the Persians, and the battles were always severe; the leaders were always present at the battles. 7. Caesar put Labienus in command of that fortification which he had made. 8. That upright man will succor those to whom food is lacking. 9. Caesar favors those leaders who succor the sick soldiers.



Arātrum.

LESSON LXIV.

Review in Vocabulary.

211. The following vocabulary, together with paragraphs 178 and 182, contains all the new words introduced since Lesson XLVIII. These words should be studied with great care; the English equivalents should be learned, and the spelling and the quantity of vowels should be mastered. Particular attention should be given to the principal parts of verbs.

212.*Word List.*

ā	audiō	dēficiō	Gallicus
absum	bellō	dēmigrō	gaudeō
abūtor	capiō	dēsum	gerō
accipiō	captivus	dīvidō	honor
ad	Carthāginiēnsis	domus	Horātius Cocles
admīror	cōgnōscō	dormiō	humus
adsum	comes	dūcō	īdem
adulēscēns	cōnficiō	ē	impedimenta
adventus	cōnfīdō	Ephesus	impedimentum
Aegyptus	contendō	errō	imperītus
agō	cotīdiē	exspectō	incolō
aliquis	crēdō	faciō	iniciō
alius	crux	faveō	īnstruō
alligō	cultus	fidē	interficiō
Alpēs	cupiō	fīnis	intersum
alter	custōdiō	frīgus	ipse
Apollo	cymba	fruor	iste
Athēnae	dē	fugiō	iussus
Athēniēnsis	Decimus Brūtus	fungor	iuvō

Labiēnus	obsum	Promētheus	Sparta
laedō	oculus	prōsum	succumbō
laetor	ōlim	pūniō	succurrō
latebra	onus	qua	suus
lēgātus	ōra	-que	tōtus
littera	orāculum	quīdam	trahō
magistrātus	parcō	quīlibet	tuus
maritimus	parēns	quispiam	ūllus
medicīna	pareō	quisquam	umquam
medicus	passus	quisque	ūnus
meus	persuādeō	quīvis	ūsus
militia	placeō	rēgnum	uter
mittō	polliceor	regō	uterque
moveō	Pompēius	rēs frūmentāria	ūtor
mūniō	pōns	resistō	venēnum
nāscor	pōpulus	rūpēs	veniō
navigō	porta	rūs	veritās
nesciō	potior	sarcina	vescor
neuter	praefficiō	sciō	vester
Nilus	praemium	scribō	vestītus
noceō	praestō	sequor	vīnciō
noster	praesum	serviō	vīncō
nūllus	prōditor	Solon	vīnea
obsistō	proficīscor	sōlus	Zama



Hercules et Stymphalidēs avēs.

LESSON LXV.

Imperative Mode and Participles.

213. Learn the imperative, second person, present, active and passive of the four conjugations and of *sum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amā	amāte	amāre	amāminī
monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
{ rege	regite	{ regere	regiminī
{ cape	capite	{ capere	capiminī
audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
es	este	—	—

214. RULE. — *The imperative mode is used to express a command, entreaty, exhortation, etc.; the negative of the imperative is expressed by means of the adverb nē.*

NOTE. — Three verbs of the third conjugation, and one irregular verb, drop the *e* of the present imperative singular, active: *dīc*, *fac*, *dūc*, and *fer*.

215. The participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an adjective. As an adjective, it limits nouns and pronouns, and agrees with them; as a verb, it has distinctions of time, and when transitive takes an object.

In Latin, there are four participles: present active and future active; perfect passive and gerundive or future passive.

The participles express time relative to the time of the principal verb. Since participles are adjectives, they are

declined. The present participle ends in **-ns** and is an adjective of the third declension of one termination ; the perfect and future participles end in **-us** and are adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Review paragraph 204.

216. Learn the participles of the four conjugations and of **sum**.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
amāns	amātūrus	amātus	amandus
monēns	monitūrus	monitus	monendus
regēns	rēctūrus	rēctus	regendus
capiēns	captūrus	captus	capiendus
audiēns	audītūrus	auditus	audiendus
—	futūrus	—	—

217. Vocabulary.

Alexandrēa , -ae, f., <i>Alexandria</i> .	Hasdrubal , -is, m., <i>Hasdrubal</i> .
Cleopātra , -ae, f., <i>Cleopatra</i> .	Platō , -ōnis, m., <i>Plato</i> .
dēspērō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to despair</i> .	moror , -ārī, -ātus sum , <i>to delay</i> .
hortor , -ārī, -ātus sum , <i>to exhort</i> .	doceō , -ēre, -uī, doctus , <i>to teach</i> .
fluō , -ere, fluxī , fluxus , <i>to flow</i> .	signum , -ī, n., <i>signal</i> .
	praeceptor , -ōris, m., <i>teacher</i> .

218. Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Rōmāni plūribus proeliis in Hispāniā ab Hasdrubale victi dē salūte nōn dēspērāvērunt. 2. Dux militibus cupientibus signum pūgnae dedit. 3. Pūgnāte, milites, fortiter

prō patriā. 4. Este benignī, deī immortālēs, miseris hominibus. 5. In Āfricā multae et pulchrae avēs videntur volantēs in silvis. 6. Educāminī, discipulī, ā magistris bonis. 7. Caesar Alexandrēā potitus rēgnum Cleopātrae dedit. 8. Discipulī praeceptoribus pārentēs laudantur. 9. Cīvēs nostrī cum hostibus urbem oppūgnantibus ācritēr dimicāvērunt.

II. 1. Plato died writing. 2. Caesar praised the soldiers who fought bravely. 3. Caesar, having delayed a few days in the territories of the Germans, hastened to Gaul. 4. The leader, having exhorted his soldiers, led them to battle ; and they fought with great bravery. 5. Children, obey your parents, for they have been kind to you. 6. Good people, be taught by the priests concerning the immortal gods. 7. The wives of the soldiers fighting in Gaul remained at home, in Italy. 8. In the river flowing swiftly are the boats of our army. 9. Good farmer, liberate those slaves laboring in your fields.



Gallī.

LESSON LXVI.

The Ablative Absolute.

219. A noun or pronoun in the ablative case, modified by a participle, is used to express time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action denoted by the main verb. This construction is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence and is, therefore, called the ablative absolute. With the noun, instead of a participle, an adjective or another noun may be used.

NOTE. — Observe carefully that the noun in the ablative absolute cannot denote the same person or thing as the subject of the sentence or clause in which it is found.

EXAMPLES: —

a. **Oppidō captō, milītēs sē dēdidērunt.**

The town having been captured, the soldiers surrendered themselves.

b. **Locō idōneō, milītēs castra posuērunt.**

The place (being) suitable, the soldiers pitched the camp.

c. **Caesare cōsule, civitās Rōmāna flōruit.**

Caesar (being) consul, the Roman state flourished.

220.*Vocabulary.*

contrā (prep. with acc.), **inveniō, -irē, -vēnī, -ventus,**
against. *to find.*

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, incendium, -ī, n., conflagra-
to surrender. *tion.*

orior, -irī, ortus sum, to rise.

vīvus, -a, um, <i>alive.</i>	aggredior, -edi, -essus sum, <i>to attack.</i>
pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, <i>to place.</i>	revocō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, <i>to</i> <i>recall.</i>
relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictus, <i>to leave.</i>	Xerxes, -is, m., <i>Xerxes.</i>
	progredior, -edi, -essus sum, <i>to advance.</i>

221.*Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Incolis fugientibus, militēs Rōmānōrum urbem occupāverunt. 2. Alpibus superātis, Hannibal in Italiā cum Rōmānis bellum gessit. 3. Xerxes, interfectis sacerdotibus, quōs in arce invēnerat, urbem incendiō dēlēvit. 4. Castris relictis, militēs in silvam fūgerunt. 5. Caesar, sōle oriente, cum equitātū ex castris profectus est, et hostēs aggressus est. 6. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, lēgātī omnium civitātum ad Caesarem vēnerunt. 7. Hostibus victis, cōsul Rōmam vēnit. 8. Hannibale vivō, Poenī cupientēs libertātem magnā cum fortitudine pūgnāverunt. 9. Quis coniūratiōnem contrā rem pūblicam, Cicerōne cōsule, fēcit?

II. 1. Hostages having been given, the leader recalled the soldiers from the battle. 2. The Gauls having been conquered, Caesar set out for Rome. 3. The army having gained a victory, the commander set out from camp in the third watch of the night. 4. The camp having been abandoned, the soldiers hastened with great speed to the city. 5. Having delayed at home, the priest did not come to the temple in the third hour. 6. Having followed the enemy, the general attacked their cavalry. 7. The inhabitants defending their towns, many of the enemy were killed.

8. The city having been taken, a messenger was sent to the consul and the senate at Rome. 9. A journey across the mountains having been made, Hannibal's army advanced into Italy.



LESSON LXVII.

Uses of the Infinitive.

222. The infinitive may be used with **sum** and similar verbs as subject, in apposition, as attribute complement, or as object of a transitive verb. Verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the infinitive; this construction is called the complementary infinitive. There are three infinitives: the present, the perfect, and the future; all these are used in the active and passive.

223. Learn the infinitives of **sum**, also of the four conjugations.

ACTIVE.

PRESENT.

amāre
monēre
{ regere
{ capere
audire
esse

PERFECT.

amāvisse
monuisse
rēxisse
cēpisse
audivisse
fuisse

FUTURE.

amātūrus esse
monitūrus esse
rēctūrus esse
captūrus esse
audītūrus esse
futūrus esse

PASSIVE.		
PRESENT.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
amārī	amātus esse	amātum irī
monērī	monitus esse	monitum irī
{regī	rēctus esse	rēctum irī
{capī	captus esse	captum irī
audīrī	auditus esse	audītum irī

224. RULES. — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case. The attribute complement used after a complementary infinitive is in the nominative case, agreeing with the subject of the finite verb.*

NOTE. — When the infinitive is used substantively it is always neuter.

EXAMPLES: —

- a. **Prō patriā morī dulce est.**
To die for one's country is sweet.
- b. **Caesar mīlitēs pontem facere iussit.**
Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.
- c. **Hic exercitus ex hiberniis ēgredī nōn ausus est.**
This army dared not go out of winter-quarters.

225. Vocabulary.

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, to go out.	audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, to dare.
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to obey.	canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, to sing.
discō, -ere, didicī, —, to learn.	ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead forth.
revertor, -ī, -ī, -sus (dep. in pres., imp., fut.), to return.	incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to begin.
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, to pardon.	dulcis, -e, sweet.

226.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Puerī parentibus pārēre dēbent; nam parentēs eōs amant. 2. Caesar milītēs in hiberniis Romae, urbe Ītaliae, manēre iussit. 3. In silvā ambulāre amō, avibus canentibus. 4. Caesar milītēs iussit ad castra venīre. 5. Castris mūnītis, Caesar vineās agere incipit. 6. Ubi milītēs Rōmānī pūgnāre didicērunt? 7. Gallī tentābant superāre Caesarem, quī exercitum Rōmā ēdūxit. 8. Nūntius missus ad ducem, domum venīre properāvit. 9. Agricolae tentābant necāre ferās, quae in agris suis erant.

II. 1. To learn is pleasing to good boys and girls. 2. All Gaul having been overcome, Caesar ordered the legions to return to him. 3. To fight is the work of a soldier; to write poetry, the work of a poet. 4. To err is human; to forgive, divine. 5. All good men try this, to educate their children. 6. The soldiers desired to wage war with the enemy. 7. Caesar ordered the soldiers to lay waste the fields of the Gallic farmers. 8. The soldiers hastened to use the arms which the townsmen gave them. 9. Every man ought to try to be upright.

*Galeae.*

LESSON LXVIII.

Possum, with the Infinitive.

227. Possum, *I am able, I can*, is a compound of *pot-* (*potis*) and *sum*. It is followed by the present infinitive. Note carefully that, in compounding *pot-* with *sum*, the *t* of *pot-* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* after *t* is dropped.

228. Learn the indicative of *possum*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum, posse, potui*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>potui</i>	<i>potuimus</i>
2. <i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>potuisti</i>	<i>potuistis</i>
3. <i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>potuit</i>	<i>potuerunt</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. <i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>
2. <i>poterās</i>	<i>poterātis</i>	<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potuerātis</i>
3. <i>poterat</i>	<i>poterant</i>	<i>potuerat</i>	<i>potuerant</i>
FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. <i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>	<i>potuerō</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>
2. <i>poteris</i>	<i>poteritis</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potueritis</i>
3. <i>poterit</i>	<i>poterunt</i>	<i>potuerit</i>	<i>potuerint</i>

229. RULE. — *Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take, in addition to the direct object, a second accusative denoting the same person or thing as the object, but not in apposition with it.*

NOTE. — When a sentence containing a double accusative is changed into the passive, the direct object becomes the subject, and the second accusative becomes the attribute complement.

EXAMPLES: —

- a. **Populus Rōmānus Cincinnātum ducem fēcit.**
The Roman people made Cincinnatus commander.
- b. **Cincinnātus ā populō Rōmānō dux factus est.**
Cincinnatus was made commander by the Roman people.

230.

Vocabulary.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to found.	excedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, to withdraw.
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to create.	impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi- tus, to impose.
dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to declare.	iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to judge.
ālā, -ae, f., wing.	Olympus, -ī, m., Olympus.

231

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Multī sine scūtīs ācritēr pūgnāre poterant. 2. Rō-
 mulus urbem, quam condiderat, Rōmam vocāvit. 3. Cicerō
 in senātū pater patriae appellātus est. 4. Dēbēs posse
 iubēre militēs urbem occupāre. 5. Sapiēns fīlius patrem
 laetum facit. 6. Quis omnia pēnsa sibi imposita facere
 poterit? 7. Catilinam senātus hostem iūdicāvit. 8. Ante
 adventum Caesaris nullae legiōnēs urbem expūgnāre potue-
 rant. 9. Puerī ācribus mentibus celeriter discere possunt.

- II. 1. Will Caesar be able to subdue Gaul in ten years?
2. After Romulus, Numa Pompilius was created king.
3. The besieging sheds which the Romans were using could be moved. 4. Our friend, the poor farmer, is able to educate his children. 5. The city which was founded by Romulus was called Rome. 6. In ancient times men called Mercury the messenger of the gods. 7. Mercury was able, by means of his wings, to fly from Olympus to the earth. 8. The whole people declared Cicero consul. 9. The soldiers who could not withdraw from the battle-line received many wounds.
-

LESSON LXIX.

Indirect Discourse.

232. The original words of an author or a speaker are said to be in *direct discourse*. When a writer or a speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use *indirect discourse*.

Indirect discourse may follow verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, etc.

233. RULE.— *The main clause of the declaratory sentence is put in the infinitive with the subject accusative. The present, the perfect, or the future infinitive is used, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future, with reference to the verb of saying, thinking, etc.*

NOTE. — Observe carefully that the subject of the infinitive in indirect discourse must regularly be expressed, even if it is wanting in the direct. Observe also that the person often changes when an expression is converted into indirect discourse.

EXAMPLES: —

- | | | | |
|----|---|-------------|--|
| a. | { | (Direct.) | Caesar cōsul est.
<i>Caesar is consul.</i> |
| | | (Indirect.) | Dixit Caesarem cōsulem esse.
<i>He said that Caesar was consul.</i> |
| b. | { | (Direct.) | Caesar cōsul fuit.
<i>Caesar was consul.</i> |
| | | (Indirect.) | Dicit Caesarem cōsulem fuisse.
<i>He says that Caesar was consul.</i> |
| c. | { | (Direct.) | Caesar cōsul erit.
<i>Caesar will be consul.</i> |
| | | (Indirect.) | Dixerat Caesarem cōsulem futurum esse.
<i>He had said that Caesar would be consul.</i> |

234.

Vocabulary.

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, to	gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, to
<i>say.</i>	<i>produce, to beget, to bear.</i>
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to	Mars, Martis, m., Mars.
<i>announce.</i>	Anaxagorās, -ae, m., Anaxagoras.

235.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Sciō mē esse mortālem. 2. Audīvī urbem expūgnātem esse. 3. Spērō mē et tē amicōs futurōs esse. 4. Sci-mus corpus mortāle, animum immortālem esse. 5. Spērō

hostēs victum irī, et eōs obsidēs datūrōs esse. 6. Caesarī nūntiātum est Helvētiōs in animō habēre iter per prōvinciam Galliam facere. 7. Graecīs nūntiātum est Athēnās ā Xerxe captās arcemque incendiō dēlētam esse. 8. Anaxagorās, morte filiī eī nūntiātā, dixisse dicitur: "Sciēbam mē genuisse mortālem." 9. Putāvī ducem id factūrum esse.

II. 1. Many said that Romulus was killed by the senators. 2. The consul hoped that Caesar would wage war successfully with the Gauls. 3. The ancients tell that Romulus founded Rome. 4. I said that you said that your brother was sick.

III. Before translating, change the following to indirect discourse:

1. The king said, "They brought the captives to me."
 2. There were seven kings in Rome. 3. Fire will destroy this city and the inhabitants will be killed. 4. The city will be captured by the enemy. 5. The songs of great poets are sung by all nations.



Signa.

LESSON LXX.

The Subjunctive Mode.—Sequence of Tenses.

236. Learn the subjunctive mode of **sum** and **possum**.

SUBJUNCTIVE.			
PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sim	simus	fuierim	fuierimus
2. sis	sitis	fuieris	fuieritis
3. sit	sint	fuierit	fuierint

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. essem	essēmus	fuissem	fuissemus
2. essēs	essētis	fuisseis	fuissetis
3. esset	essent	fuisset	fuisissent

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
1. possim	possimus	potuerim	potuerimus
2. possis	possitis	potueris	potueritis
3. possit	possint	potuerit	potuerint

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. possem	possemus	potuissem	potuissemus
2. posseis	possetis	potuisseis	potuissetis
3. posset	possent	potuisset	potuissent

NOTE.—In Latin there are only four tenses in the subjunctive mode.

237. All tenses are divided into two classes, *primary* and *secondary*. The primary tenses of the indicative are: the present, the future, the perfect, and the future perfect. The

secondary or historical tenses are: the imperfect, the historical perfect, and the pluperfect.

NOTE.—The present perfect and the historical use of the perfect tense are shown in paragraph 54.

In the subjunctive, the primary tenses are: the present and the perfect; the secondary tenses are: the imperfect and the pluperfect.

238. RULES.—a. *In indirect discourse the subjunctive is always used in subordinate clauses.*

b. *Sequence of Tenses.*—*In complex sentences, a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary in the subordinate; a secondary, by a secondary.*

EXAMPLE:—

Scimus puerōs eōs, quī eis benigni fuerint, amāre.

We know that children love those who have been kind to them.

239.

Vocabulary.

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, control.* aperiō, -īre, -erui, -ertus, to open.

Dārius, -ii, m., *Darius.*

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, labor.*

dēlectus, -ūs, m., *selection.*

sepulorum, -i, n., *sepulcher.*

240.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Rēx omnēs civēs Rōmānōs, quī in Asiā essent, unō diē interfici iussit. 2. Plato eam rem pūblicam optimam esse dicit, quae in potestāte optimōrum sit. 3. Spērō ducem, quī hostēs vicerit, Rōmam ventūrum esse. 4. Au-

divimus obsidēs ducī exercitūs nostri quī in Galliā esset, datōs esse. 5. Agricola dixit sē eōs servōs, quī labōrem relinquere possent, revocātūrū esse.

II. 1. The ancients said that Romulus, who was the son of Mars, founded Rome, a city in Italy. 2. Darius ordered the grave of the queen to be opened, because he hoped that much gold would be found there. 3. The general said that the part of the Roman army which had set out against the enemy was defeated. 4. The general hoped that, a selection having been made (*habēre*), the band of the Romans that had come to the citadel and occupied it, would not be defeated by the enemy. 5. The city having been captured and the enemy surrendering, the commander told the hostages that he was about to liberate them.



LESSON LXXI.

Purpose and Result Clauses with *ut*.

241. RULE. — *Clauses of purpose introduced by ut (aff.) and nē (neg.) take the subjunctive; clauses of result introduced by ut (aff.) and ut nōn (neg.), take the subjunctive.*

EXAMPLES: —

a. **Rōmam vēnit ut amīcōs liberāret.**

He came to Rome that he might free his friends.

b. **Tempus erat tam breve ut castra nōn mūnīrēmus.**

The time was so short that we did not fortify the camp.

242. Learn the subjunctive of *amō* and *monēō* :

<i>Active.</i>		SUBJUNCTIVE.		<i>Passive.</i>
		PRESENT.		
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1. <i>amem</i>	<i>amēmus</i>	<i>amer</i>	<i>amēmur</i>	
2. <i>amēs</i>	<i>amētis</i>	<i>amēris, -re</i>	<i>amēmini</i>	
3. <i>amet</i>	<i>ament</i>	<i>amētur</i>	<i>amentur</i>	
		IMPERFECT.		
1. <i>amārem</i>	<i>amārēmus</i>	<i>amārer</i>	<i>amārēmur</i>	
2. <i>amārēs</i>	<i>amārētis</i>	<i>amārēris, -re</i>	<i>amārēmini</i>	
3. <i>amāret</i>	<i>amārent</i>	<i>amārētur</i>	<i>amārentur</i>	
		PERFECT.		
1. <i>amāverim</i>	<i>amāverimus</i>	<i>amātus,</i>	<i>amātī,</i>	<i>amātus</i>
2. <i>amāveris</i>	<i>amāveritis</i>	<i>-a, -um</i>	<i>-ae, -a</i>	<i>amātis</i>
3. <i>amāverit</i>	<i>amāverint</i>	<i>ait</i>	<i>aiūt</i>	<i>aiūt</i>
		PLUPERFECT.		
1. <i>amāvissem</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>	<i>amātus,</i>	<i>amātī,</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>
2. <i>amāvissēs</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>	<i>-a, -um</i>	<i>-ae, -a</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>
3. <i>amāvisset</i>	<i>amāvissent</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essēt</i>	<i>essēt</i>
		PRESENT.		
1. <i>moneam</i>	<i>moneāmus</i>	<i>monear</i>	<i>moneāmur</i>	
2. <i>moneās</i>	<i>moneātis</i>	<i>moneāris, -re</i>	<i>moneāmini</i>	
3. <i>moneat</i>	<i>moneant</i>	<i>moneātur</i>	<i>moneantur</i>	
		IMPERFECT.		
1. <i>monērem</i>	<i>monērēmus</i>	<i>monērer</i>	<i>monērēmur</i>	
2. <i>monērēs</i>	<i>monērētis</i>	<i>monērēris, -re</i>	<i>monērēmini</i>	
3. <i>monēret</i>	<i>monērent</i>	<i>monērētur</i>	<i>monērentur</i>	

PERFECT.

1. monuerim	monuerimus	monitus,	{ aim	moniti,	{ aimus
2. monueris	monueritis	-a, -um	{ ais	-ae, -a	{ sitis
3. monuerit	monuerint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT.

1. monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus,	{ essem	moniti,	{ essēmus
2. monuissēs	monuissētis	-a, -um	{ esēs	-ae, -a	{ essētis
3. monuisset	monuissent		{ esset		{ essent

243.

Vocabulary.

Crassus, -ī, m., <i>Crassus</i> .	congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to assemble</i> .
adventus, -ūs, m., <i>arrival</i> .	renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to renew</i> .
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>change</i> .	remaneō, -ēre, -mansī, <i>to remain</i> .
porta, -ae, f., <i>gate</i> .	vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to shun</i> .
commeātus, -ūs, m., <i>provision</i> .	claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, <i>to shut</i> .
sūspiciō, -ōnis, f., <i>suspicion</i> .	sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, <i>to sustain</i> .
tantus, -a, -um, <i>so great</i> .	dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, <i>to choose</i> .
barbarus, -a, -um, <i>barbarous</i> .	prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>to keep off, to prohibit</i> .
nōnnāllus, -a, -um, <i>some</i> .	
ut (conj.), <i>so that, in order that</i> .	
nē (conj.), <i>that not, lest</i> .	
tam (adv.), <i>so</i> .	
contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus, <i>to hasten</i> .	

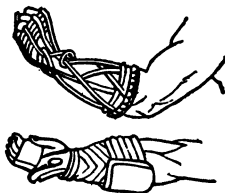
244.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Fortitudō hostium tanta erat, ut nōn fugārentur, sed omnēs pūgnantēs necārentur. 2. Summā celeritāte in

Galliam contendērunt ut agrōs hostium vāstārent. 3. Crassus in Aquitāniam proficiscitur, nē tantae nātiōnēs congregentur. 4. Nōn tam barbarus sum ut haec nōn scire possim. 5. Caesaris adventū tanta commūtātiō rērum facta est ut nostrī proelium renovārent. 6. Castra in locis superiōribus posuit nē quis ea oppūgnāret. 7. Nōnnūlli remanēbant ut sūspiciōnem timōris vitārent. 8. Portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī iniūriam sustinērent.

II. 1. In summer, the farmer labored in the field in order that he might have grain in winter. 2. In summer, the farmer labored in the field so that he had grain in winter. 3. We shall winter in Gaul in order that we may easily attack the towns in summer. 4. The soldiers fought bravely in order that the town might not be taken. 5. The soldiers fought bravely so that the town was not taken. 6. The enemy will send hostages in order that they may please Caesar. 7. He selected a place suitable for a camp in order that he might not be kept away from provisions. 8. The town having been attacked, the townsmen were so frightened that they were immediately put to flight.



Caestūs.

LESSON LXXII.

Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

245. RULE.— *Relative clauses of purpose, result, cause, and characteristic take the subjunctive.*

EXAMPLES:—

a. *Caesar funditōrēs misit, quī hostēs morārentur.*
Caesar sent slingers who should delay the enemy.

b. *Quis est quī hōc nesciat?*
Who is there that does not know this?

246. Learn the subjunctive of *regō* and *audiō*.

		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		Active.	Passive.
		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>regam</i>	<i>regāmus</i>	<i>regar</i>	<i>regāmur</i>
2. <i>regās</i>	<i>regātis</i>	<i>regāris, -re</i>	<i>regāmini</i>
3. <i>regat</i>	<i>regant</i>	<i>regātur</i>	<i>regantur</i>
		IMPERFECT.	
1. <i>regerem</i>	<i>regerēmus</i>	<i>regerer</i>	<i>regerēmur</i>
2. <i>regerēs</i>	<i>regerētis</i>	<i>regerēris, -re</i>	<i>regerēmini</i>
3. <i>regeret</i>	<i>regerent</i>	<i>regerētur</i>	<i>regerentur</i>
		PERFECT.	
1. <i>rēxerim</i>	<i>rēxerimus</i>	<i>rēctus,</i> { <i>sim</i>	<i>rēcti,</i> { <i>simus</i>
2. <i>rēxeris</i>	<i>rēxeritis</i>	<i>-a, -um,</i> { <i>sis</i>	<i>-ae, -a,</i> { <i>sitis</i>
3. <i>rēxerit</i>	<i>rēxerint</i>	<i>ait</i>	<i>aint</i>
		PLUPERFECT.	
1. <i>rēxissem</i>	<i>rēxissēmus</i>	<i>rēctus,</i> { <i>essem</i>	<i>rēcti,</i> { <i>essēmus</i>
2. <i>rēxissēs</i>	<i>rēxissētis</i>	<i>-a, -um,</i> { <i>essēs</i>	<i>-ae, -a,</i> { <i>essētis</i>
3. <i>rēxisset</i>	<i>rēxissent</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
2. audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
3. audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

1. audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
2. audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, -re	audīrēmini
3. audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

1. audīverim	audīverimus	audītus, {	audīti, {
2. audīveris	audīveritis	-a, -um, {	-ae, -a, {
3. audīverit	audīverint	aud	aud

PLUPERFECT.

1. audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus, {	audīti, {
2. audīvisēs	audīvissetis	-a, -um, {	-ae, -a, {
3. audīvisset	audīvisset	aud	aud

NOTE. — The subjunctive of *capio* and other -i stems of the third conjugation is like the subjunctive of *rego*. Review paragraph 193.

247.

Vocabulary.

Aeduis, -i, -an, *Haeduan*.

agmen, -inis, n., *battle-line*.

libenter (adv.), *gladly*.

cum (conj.), *when, since*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to attempt*.

obsideo, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *to besiege*.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to shut off*.

petō, -ere, *petivī*, *petitus*, *to seek*.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead across*.

funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger*.

248. *Exercises in Translation.*

I. 1. Caesar partem suōrum militum trādūcere cōnātus est qui hostēs vincerent. 2. Multī sunt quī haec sciant. 3. Aedui lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, quī auxilium ab eō peterent. 4. Primā lūce tōtum exercitum, qui āgmen hostium interclūderet, misit. 5. Quis es quī amīcis libenter iniūriam facias? 6. Nulla via erat quae nōn obsidērētur. 7. Quis est quem amīci sui nōn laudent? 8. Caesar lēgātum misit, quī novās legiōnēs in Galliam dūceret.

II. 1. The enemy sent ambassadors to the Romans, who should seek peace. 2. Who is there that will not kill the enemies of the Roman people? 3. There were those who came to Rome after the battle. 4. Caesar sent ambassadors to Rome, who should say that the Gauls were conquered. 5. The Gauls seeing our men, fled into the forests. 6. That the enemy may be defeated, we will advance into their country. 7. Caesar made a bridge that it might be an aid to him. 8. He sends ambassadors to the Haeduans that he may have an abundance of grain.

*Miles.*

LESSON LXXIII.

Cum-Clauses.

249. Clauses introduced by *cum* may express time, cause, or concession.

RULES.—*a. In cum-clauses expressing time, if the tense is present, future, historical perfect, or future perfect, the indicative is used; if the tense is imperfect or pluperfect, the subjunctive is used.*

b. In cum-clauses expressing cause or concession, the subjunctive is always used.

EXAMPLES:—

a. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, duae factiōnēs erant.

When Caesar arrived in Gaul, there were two factions.

Caesar cum ex captivīs quaereret, hanc causam reperībat.

When Caesar inquired of the captives, he found this cause.

b. Cum nobīs nāvēs nōn essent, venīre nōn poterāmus.

Since we did not have boats, we could not come.

250. Learn the irregular verb *ferō*, to bear, carry.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*

<i>Active.</i>		INDICATIVE.		<i>Passive.</i>
		PRESENT.		
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1. ferō	ferimus	feror		ferimur
2. fers	fertis	ferris, -re		ferimini
3. fert	ferunt	fertur		feruntur
IMPERFECT.				
1. ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar		ferēbāmur
2. ferēbās	ferēbātis	ferēbāris, -re		ferēbāmini
3. ferēbat	ferēbant	ferēbātur		ferēbantur

FUTURE.

1. feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur
2. ferēs	ferētis	ferēris, -re	ferēmini
3. feret	ferent	ferētur	ferentur

PERFECT.

1. tulī	tulimus	lātus	{ sum	lātī	{ sumus
2. tulistī	tulistis	-a, -um	{ es	-ae, -a	{ estis
3. tulit	tulērunt, -re		{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT.

1. tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus,	{ eram	lātī,	{ erāmus
2. tulerās	tulerātis	-a, -um,	{ erās	-ae, -a,	{ erātis
3. tulerat	tulerant		{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. tulerō	tulerimus	lātus,	{ erō	lātī,	{ erimus
2. tuleris	tuleritis	-a, -um,	{ eris	-ae, -a,	{ eritis
3. tulerit	tulerint		{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

1. feram	ferāmus	ferar	ferāmur
2. ferās	ferātis	ferāris, -re	ferāmini
3. ferat	ferant	ferātur	ferantur

IMPERFECT.

1. ferrem	ferrēmus	ferrer	ferrēmur
2. ferrēs	ferrētis	ferrēris, -re	ferrēmini
3. ferret	ferrent	ferrētur	ferrentur

PERFECT.

1. tulerim	tulerimus	lātus,	{ sim	lātī,	{ simus
2. tuleris	tuleritis	-a, -um,	{ sis	-ae, -a,	{ sitis
3. tulerit	tulerint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT.							
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. tulissem	tulissēmus			lātus,	{ essem essēs esset	lātī,	{ essēmus essētis essent
2. tulissēs	tulissētis			-a, -um,		-ae, -a,	
3. tulisset	tulissent						
IMPERATIVE.							
fer		ferite		ferre		ferimini	
INFINITIVES.							
PRES. ferre				ferri			
PERF. tulisse				lātus esse			
FUT. lātūrus esse				lātum iri			
PARTICIPLES.							
PRES. ferēns				PERF. lātus			
FUT. lātūrus				GER. ferendus			

251.

Vocabulary.

rūrsus (adv.), <i>again.</i>	accēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessus, <i>to approach.</i>
urgēō, -ēre, ursī, —, <i>to impel, urge.</i>	afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, <i>to bring, to carry to.</i>
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, <i>to advance.</i>	prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>to throw forth.</i>
cohōrtor, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>to encourage.</i>	—, —, coepī, coeptus, <i>to begin.</i>
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, <i>to regain, take back.</i>	

252.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Caesar, cum suōs urgērī vidēret, in primam aciem prōcessit et milītēs cohōrtātus est. 2. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, rūrsus aliam in

partem fugam petēbant. 3. Cum ad id oppidum accessisset, puerī mulierēsque pācem petivērunt. 4. Cum nūntius veniet, cognōscēmus. 5. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernīs, crēbrī ad eum nūntiī afferēbantur. 6. Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit.

II. 1. Since we love our native land, we will fight for her. 2. When he who carried the eagle of the tenth legion called, the other soldiers followed. 3. When the letters of Caesar had been carried to Rome, all men rejoiced. 4. When he had said this, he began to carry the eagle against (into) the enemy. 5. Although Caesar is in Gaul, many letters are brought to him. 6. When Caesar is in Gaul, many letters are brought to him.



LESSON LXXIV.

The Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.

253. RULE.— *Verbs of fearing are followed by the subjunctive with nē and ut, nē being used to express the affirmative and ut the negative.*

EXAMPLES:—

a. **Timēmus nē exercitus veniat.**

We fear that the army will come.

b. **Timēmus ut auxilium feratur.**

We fear that help will not be brought.

254. The irregular verb **fiō** is simply the passive voice of **facio**. The compound tenses are omitted here, since they have been learned in connection with the third conjugation.

Learn the conjugation of **fiō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fiō, fierī, factus sum.**

INDICATIVE.					
PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
1. fiō	fīmus	fībam	fībāmus	fiam	fīemur
2. fīs	fītis	fībās	fībātis	fīs	fīetis
3. fit	fiunt	fībat	fībant	fiet	fient

SUBJUNCTIVE.					
PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.			
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.		
1. fiam	fīamus	1. fierem	fierēmus		
2. fīas	fīātis	2. fierēs	fierētis		
3. fiat	fiant	3. fieret	fierent		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVES.	
SING.	PLU.	PRES.	PRES.
fi	fite	fieri	factus esse
		FUT.	factum iri

PARTICIPLES.		
PRES. ———	PERF. factus	GER. faciendus

255. *Vocabulary.*

fiō, fierī, factus sum , <i>be made, to become.</i>	valeō, -ēre, valui, — , <i>to be well.</i>
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum , <i>to fear, be afraid of.</i>	offendō, -ere, offendī, offēsus , <i>to offend, displease.</i>
timeō, -ēre, uī, — , <i>to fear.</i>	pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus , <i>to pacify, subdue.</i>
metuō, -ere, metuī, metūtus , <i>to fear.</i>	

256.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Vereor ut rēgi placēre possim. 2. Dux timuit nē, māgnō itinere factō, hostēs oppidum oppugnārent. 3. Agricola dicit sē timēre nē milītēs agrōs vāstent. 4. Mali hominēs timent nē pūniantur. 5. Hostēs, timentēs nē vincerentur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt. 6. Nautae metuērunt nē nāvēs ā deīs tempestāte dēlērentur. 7. Caesar verētur nē hostēs locum occupent. 8. Māter timet ut filia valeat.

II. 1. He was fearing that he should offend. 2. He was fearing that the allies would not come. 3. Caesar was fearing that the king would not avoid suspicions. 4. I fear that he is not able to lead a strong army. 5. I am afraid that this will not be done. 6. I fear that my son will not be able to come. 7. They had feared lest the army of the Roman people should winter in Gaul. 8. They feared that, all Gaul having been pacified, our army would be led to them.

*Pedes.*

LESSON LXXV.

Indirect Questions.

257. When a dependent clause is introduced by an interrogative word and contains the substance of a question, though not in interrogative form, it is called an indirect question.

RULE.— *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

EXAMPLE.— *Scimus quis Gallōs superāverit.*

We know who overcame the Gauls.

258. Learn the conjugation of *volō, nōlō, mālō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

volō, velle, volui, to be willing, to desire.

nōlō, nolle, noluī, to be unwilling.

mālō, malle, mālui, to prefer.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
1.	<i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nolumus</i>	<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
2.	<i>vīs</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvīs</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
3.	<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

NOTE.— The remaining forms of the indicative, *volēbam, nōlēbam, etc.*, of the third conjugation, are regular.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
1. velim	velimus	nōlim	nōlimus	mālim	mālimus
2. vellis	velitis	nōlis	nōlitis	mālis	mālitis
3. velit	velint	nōlit	nōlint	mālit	mālint

IMPERFECT.

1. vellem	vellēmus	nōllem	nōllēmus	māllem	māllēmus
2. vellēs	vellētis	nōllēs	nōllētis	māllēs	māllētis
3. vellet	vellent	nōllet	nōllent	māllet	māllent

NOTE. — The remaining forms of these verbs are regular of the third conjugation. The imperative is found only in **nōlō**; there are **nō** future infinitives nor participles; no present participle of **mālō**.

259.

Vocabulary.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, <i>to understand.</i>	mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>to admire, wonder at.</i>
quaerō, -ere, quaeſivī, quaeſitus, <i>to ask, inquire.</i>	reperiō, -perīre, repperī, <i>-pertus, to find, discover.</i>
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, <i>to speak.</i>	lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>embassy.</i>
praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, <i>-missus, to send forward.</i>	quantus, -a, -um, <i>how great.</i>
sī (conj.), if.	quālis, quāle, of what sort.
	utrum (conj.), whether.

260.

Exercises in Translation.

- I. 1. Ubi fueris proximā nocte intellegere nōn possum.
 2. Oculis nōn potest iūdicārī in utram partem flūmen fluat.
 3. Sciō quis sit ille vir. 4. Magister ab illō quaeſivit cūr

āfuisset. 5. Sciō cūr agricolae Rōmae cōsulēs saepe factī sint. 6. Mīsīt quī cognōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis. 7. Pōnit custōdēs ut scīre possit quae agat, quibuscum loquātur. 8. Caesar dīxit dē quartā vigiliā sē castra mōtūrum esse ut intellegere posset quis esset imperātor hostium.

II. 1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. The leader sent the soldiers forward who should see in what direction the enemy had fled. 3. The farmer wondered what the cause of his grief was. 4. Tell me where you were, what you did. 5. He inquired of them what and how great states were in arms. 6. I inquire of you whether you are the chief of this embassy. 7. He sends a lieutenant that he may lay waste the fields. 8. I found out why you were absent.



LESSON LXXVI.

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

261. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express an exhortation, a command, a wish, doubt, or indignation.

RULE. — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without utinam. The negative is nē. Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and wishes referring to the past, the pluperfect.*

EXAMPLES: —

AFFIRMATIVE.	NEGATIVE.
Exhortation — Eāmus , <i>Let us go.</i>	Nē eāmus , <i>Let us not go.</i>
Command — Dīcat , <i>Let him tell.</i>	Nē dīcat , <i>Let him not tell.</i>
Command — Hōc fac , <i>Do this.</i>	Nōlī hōc facere , <i>Don't do this.</i>
Doubt — Hōc faciam , <i>Shall I do this?</i>	Hōc nōn faciam , <i>Shall I not do this?</i>
Wish (future) — Veniant , <i>May they come!</i>	Nē veniant , <i>May they not come!</i>
Wish (present) — (Utinam) bonus essēs , <i>Would that you were good.</i>	Utinam nē malus essēs , <i>Would that you were not bad.</i>
Wish (past) — (Utinam) bonus fuissēs , <i>Would that you had been good.</i>	Utinam nē malus fuissēs , <i>Would that you had not been bad.</i>

262. Learn the conjugation of **eō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō**, **ire**, **ivī** (**if**), **itus**, *to go*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
2. is	itis	eās	eātis
3. it	eunt	eat	eant
IMPERFECT.			
1. ībam	ībāmus	īrem	īrēmus
2. ībās	ībātis	īrēs	īrētis
3. ībat	ībant	īret	īrent

FUTURE.			
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. ibō	ibimus		
2. ibis	ibitis		
3. ibit	ibunt		
PERFECT.			
1. ivi	ivimus	iverim	iverimus
2. ivistī	ivistis	iveris	iveritis
3. ivit	iverunt	iverit	iverint
PLUPERFECT.			
1. iveram	iverāmus	ivissem	ivissēmus
2. iverās	iverātis	ivissēs	ivissētis
3. iverat	iverant	ivisset	ivissent
FUTURE PERFECT.			
1. iverō	iverimus		
2. iveris	iveritis		
3. iverit	iverint		
IMPERATIVE.			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
PRESENT.	I		Ite
INFINITIVES.			
PRES. Ire	PERF. Ivisse (Isse)	FUT. itūrus esse	
PARTICIPLES.			
PRES. iēns, euntis	FUT. itūrus	GER. eundus	

263.

Vocabulary.

eō, Ire, ivī, itus, to go.	exeō, -Ire, -īl, -itus, to go
redeō, -Ire, -īl, -itus, to return.	away, go out.
trāneō, -Ire, -īl, -itus, to	ineō, -Ire, -īl, -itus, to go in,
cross.	enter.
enim (conj.), for.	

cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to collect.	stō, stāre, stetī, —, to stand.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, to remain.	dīgnus, -a, -um, worthy. impius, -a, -um, wicked, im- pious.
cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēn- sus, to agree.	utinam (adv.), O that, would that.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to think.	inīre cōnsiliū, to form a plan.

264.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Amēmus patriam ut bonī cīvēs sīmus. 2. Impiī nē plācāre audeant deōs. 3. Rēx dixit: "Cūrae tibi sit ea rēs." 4. Utinam domī essem ingēns enim leō ad mē venit. 5. Quid faciam? Nam omnēs cōnsentiunt leōnem esse hominī inimicum. 6. Nōlī putāre mē patriam nōn amāre. 7. Cūret ut vir dīgnus sit, et cōgitet quō in locō stet. 8. Utinam domō āfuisset. 9. Sīmus fortēs; pūgnēmus prō patriā. 10. Redeāmus domum.

II. 1. Let us cross this river. 2. Let them go into battle at night in order that the enemy may not see them. 3. May they bring back a victory and save their country. 4. Would that many youths chose rather to remain with their parents than to go away from home! 5. Why have you gone away from home? Would that you had remained at home! 6. May he be a just man and a good judge! 7. Let us collect all our goods and go into the province. 8. Would that you had been a faithful friend and a man worthy of confidence! 9. Shall I begin to form plans concerning war? 10. O that you may always be a good citizen and love your country!

LESSON LXXVII.

Conditional Sentences.

265. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses, an independent and a dependent clause. The independent clause, the **Apodosis**, contains the conclusion; the dependent clause, the **Protasis**, contains the condition. The condition is generally introduced by some form of **si**, *if*.

Conditions are divided into two general classes, those of present or past time, and those of future time. The following diagram presents the various divisions: —

Conditions	{	Present or Past	{	Nothing Implied	{	Prot., Ind.
				Apod., Ind.		
	{	Future	{	Contrary to Fact	{	Prot., Subj.
				Apod., Subj.		
	{	Future	{	Vivid (Probable)	{	Prot., Ind.
				Apod., Ind.		
{	Future	{	Less Vivid (Possible)	{	Prot., Subj.	
			Apod., Subj.			

266. RULES. — a. *In conditional sentences of present or past time implying nothing as to fact, the indicative is used in both clauses.*

b. *In conditions of present or past time contrary to fact the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

EXAMPLES:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | SI vincit, laetatur, <i>if he conquers, he rejoices.</i> |
| | SI vincēbat, laetābatur, <i>if he was conquering, he was rejoicing.</i> |
| | SI vicit, laetatus est, <i>if he conquered, he rejoiced.</i> |
| { | SI vinceret, laetārētur, <i>if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.</i> |
| | SI vicisset, laetatus esset, <i>if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.</i> |

267.

Vocabulary.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-	incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to
sus, to overwhelm.	urge on, encourage.
prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus,	creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
to take care, provide.	make, elect.
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,	penna, -ae, f., feather, wing.
to come, arrive.	nisi (conj.), unless, if not.

268.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Si pūgnat, vincit. 2. Si pūgnāret, vinceret. 3. Nisi id fieret, nōn adessem. 4. Avēs nisi pennās habērent volāre nōn possent. 5. Rēs pūblica oppressa esset, nisi cōsul prōvidisset. 6. Si dignus essēs, quī Rōmānus appellārēris, hostibus resisterēs. 7. Si hōc dīxissēs, errāvissēs. 8. Si imperātor factus essēs, omnēs hostēs vīcissēs. 9. Dictātōrēs ā Rōmānis creābantur, sī urbs māgnō in perīculō erat. 10. Si equum incitāvisset, celeriter ad castra pervēnisset.

II. 1. If I had not urged on my horse, I should not have arrived at the city. 2. If you wish, you may return

on the tenth day. 3. If he had remained at home, he would not have been killed. 4. If Cincinnatus had been commander, the enemy would have been conquered. 5. If the cavalry crossed the river, they remained in the city. 6. If you were writing a letter to your friend, we should be glad. 7. If Caesar had adopted another plan of battle, he would easily have conquered the enemy. 8. He thought, these having been conquered, that he could lead the army into the territories of the Haeduans. 9. Would that the leader had overcome the soldiers of the enemy! 10. If this had not been done, I should not have been present.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conditional Sentences (*Continued*).

269. Future conditions are divided into two classes, the vivid and the less vivid. The vivid expresses probability; the less vivid, mere possibility.

270. RULES. — a. *In vivid future conditions the indicative is used in both clauses.*

b. *In less vivid future conditions the subjunctive is used in both clauses.*

In the vivid condition, the future or future perfect indicative is used in the protasis, and the future in the apodosis; in the less vivid future condition the present or perfect subjunctive is used in the protasis, and the present or perfect subjunctive in the apodosis.

EXAMPLES:—

- { **SĪ vincet, laetābitur.** *If he conquers, he will rejoice.*
 { **SĪ vicerit, laetābitur.** *If he conquers, he will rejoice.*
 { **SĪ vincat, laetētur.** *If he should conquer, he would rejoice.*
 { **SĪ vicerit, laetātus sit.** *If he should conquer, he would rejoice.*

271.

Vocabulary.

- tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *to endure, bear.*
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to kill.*
renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to report, announce.*

272.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. **SĪ pūgnābit, vincet.** 2. **SĪ pūgnāverit, vincet.** 3. **SĪ id fiet, prōvinciae periculōsum erit.** 4. **SĪ Rōmam ībis, multa et pulchra aedificia vidēbis.** 5. **SĪ Athēnās eās, pulchram et clāram urbem videās.** 6. **SĪ Caesar equitēs praemittat, pontem trāseant.** 7. **SĪ dux militēs praemittet, māgnū hostiū numerū occīdent.** 8. **Lēgātus nisi interfectus erit, in Ītaliā revertētur ut cōsuli haec renūntiet.**

II. 1. *If he will conquer Asia, will it endure two kings?* 2. *If he should do this, it would be well.* 3. *If he should go to Athens, he would see a great city.* 4. *If he will go into Italy, he will see Rome, a beautiful city.* 5. *If the army should cross the river, the enemy would not follow.* 6. *If Caesar conquers the enemy, he will make a bridge, that the river may be crossed without boats.* 7. *If he had been present, we should have been glad.* 8. *Would that he had been present!*

LESSON LXXIX.

Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine.

273. The gerund is a neuter verbal noun of the second declension. As a noun it is itself governed by other words; as a verb it may take an object. It lacks the nominative case, which is supplied by the infinitive. The accusative of the gerund is used only as the object of a preposition. Otherwise the infinitive is used.

Learn the gerunds of the four conjugations and the irregular verbs: —

GERUNDS.	GERUND DECLINED.
1. amandum	N. —
2. monendum	G. amandī
3. { regendum	D. amandō
{ capiendum	A. amandum
4. audiendum	A. amandō
ferendum	
eundum	

274. The gerundive, or future passive participle, is a verbal adjective, and is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

Learn the gerundives of the four conjugations and of **ferō**.

GERUNDIVES.
1. amandus, -a, -um
2. monendus, -a, -um
3. { regendus, -a, -um
{ capiendus, -a, -um
4. audiendus, -a, -um
ferendus, -a, -um

RULE. — *The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad is used to denote purpose.*

Instead of the genitive or the ablative of the gerund with a direct object, another construction may be, and very often is, used. This consists in putting the direct object in the case of the gerund and using the gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the gerundive construction.

EXAMPLES: —

(Gerund.) **Potestās datur urbem capiendī.**

An opportunity of taking the city is offered.

(Gerundive.) **Potestās datur urbis capiendae.**

An opportunity of taking the city is offered.

275. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension having no distinction of tense or person, and is found in the accusative and ablative cases only.

RULE. — *The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose; the supine in -ū is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus as an ablative of specification.*

Learn the supines of the four conjugations and of ferō and eō: —

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
1.	amātum	amātū
2.	monitum	monitū
3.	{ rēctum	rēctū
	{ captum	captū
4.	audītum	audītū
	lātum	lātū
	itum	itū

276.

Vocabulary.

onerāria nāvis, f., <i>transport ship.</i>	sūmō, -ere, sumpsi, sumptus, <i>to take.</i>
satis (adv.), <i>enough.</i>	conventus, -ūs, m., <i>assembly.</i>
dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to deliberate.</i>	trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to carry across.</i>
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to confirm, to establish.</i>	importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to import.</i>
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, <i>to believe.</i>	rēspōndē, -ēre, -spōndī, -spōnsus, <i>to reply, answer.</i>
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to think, judge.</i>	legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>to read.</i>
effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>to enervate.</i>	pertinē, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, <i>to pertain, belong.</i>

277.

Exercises in Translation.

I. 1. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum esse. 2. Caesar loquendi finem facit. 3. Hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. 4. Ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est. 5. Ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important. 6. Existimābat LXXX nāvis onerāriās esse satis ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs. 7. Decima legiō sē esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. 8. Discipuli quae facillima sunt factū facient. 9. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 10. Lēgātī pācem petitūm vērērunt.

II. 1. The army used many horses for transporting grain. 2. Caesar delays in this place for the sake of preparing his ships. 3. These books are suitable for reading. 4. We are

thinking about taking the city. 5. He says that seeing is believing. 6. He sent the farmers into the fields to collect grain. 7. The messenger hastens to carry a letter to Rome. 8. The city having been besieged, to surrender was the best thing to do. 9. Ambassadors came to him to beg peace.



LESSON LXXX.

The Periphrastic Conjugation.

278. The active periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum** ; the passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive with the verb **sum** ; as follows : —

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātūrus sum	amātūrī sumus	amandus sum	amandī sumus
amātūrus es	amātūrī estis	amandus es	amandī estis
amātūrus est	amātūrī sunt	amandus est	amandī sunt

The future active and the future passive participle are combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of **sum**. The tenses are called present, imperfect, etc., according to the tense of **sum** employed.

The passive periphrastic conjugation involves the idea of duty, necessity, or obligation.

EXAMPLES:—

(Active.) **Illō tempore Caesar Rōmae rēctūrus erat.**
At that time Caesar was about to rule at Rome.

(Passive.) **Omnia tūnō tempore agenda erant.**
All things had to be done at one time.

279. RULE.— *The passive periphrastic conjugation is followed by the dative denoting the agent.*

EXAMPLE:—

Caesarī omnia tūnō tempore agenda erant.
All things had to be done by Caesar at one time.

Review paragraph 70.

280.*Vocabulary.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, morior, morī, mortuus sum,
to finish. to die.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., thanks-
to run. giving.

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, partiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, to
to decree. divide.

distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ītus, to revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
distribute. call back.

vendō, -ere, -didī, -dītus, to sell.

281.*Exercises in Translation.*

- I. 1. Dux decimam legiōnem trāns flūmen missūrus erat.
2. Militibus initā aestāte bellum gerendum erit. 3. Dixit pontem militibus faciendum esse. 4. Acīēs instruenda, signum dandum, milītēs ab opere revocandī sunt. 5. Castra

mūnienda erunt et cōpiae nostrae trāns flūmen ducendae erunt. 6. Militibus ad flūmen currendum est. 7. Putāvit exercitum sibi partiendum et distribuendum esse. 8. Utinam domum itūrus essem.

II. 1. On that day Caesar was about to sell the booty. 2. The farmer is about to call his daughter. 3. Money must be given to the queen by the poet. 4. When Caesar arrived, the army had to be led into winter-quarters by the leaders. 5. A thanksgiving must be decreed for Caesar by the Roman senate. 6. If I am about to die, it is well. 7. If Gaul must be subdued, Caesar must subdue it. 8. The work must be finished this day.



LESSON LXXXI.

Review in Vocabulary.

282. The following vocabulary contains all the new words introduced since Lesson LXIV. These words should be studied with care; the English equivalents should be learned and the quantity of vowels should be mastered. Particular attention should be given to the principal parts of verbs.

283.

Word List.

accēdō	āgmen	barbarus	cōgitō
adventus	āla	canō	cohōrtor
Aeduus	Alexandrēa	claudō	commūtātiō
afferō	Anaxagorās	Cleopātra	condō
aggredior	audeō	coepī	cōnferō

cōnficiō	existimō	nē	relinquō
cōnfirmō	ferō	nōlō	remaneō
congregō	fiō	nōnnūllus	renovō
cōnor	fluō	nūntiō	renūntiō
cōnsentiō	funditor	obsidiō	reperiō
contendō	gignō	occidō	respondeō
contrā	Hasdrubal	offendō	revertor
conventus	hortor	Olympus	revocō
Crassus	ignōscō	onerārius	rūsus
crēdō	impius	opprimō	satis
creō	impōnō	orior	sīgnum
cum	importō	pācō	stō
currō	incendium	partiō	sūmō
dēbeō	incipiō	penna	supplicātiō
dēcernō	incitō	pertineō	sūspiciō
dēclārō	ineō	pervenio	sustineō
dēdō	intellegō	petō	tam
dēliberō	interclūdō	Platō	tantus
dēligō	inveniō	pōnō	timeō
dēspērō	iūdicō	porta	tolerō
dīcō	laetor	possum	trāducō
dīgnus	lātus	praeceptor	trānseō
discō	lēgātiō	praemittō	trānsportō
distribuō	legō	prōcēdō	urgeō
doceō	libenter	prōgredior	ut
dulcis	loquor	prohibeō	utinam
ēdūcō	mālō	prōiciō	valeō
effēminō	maneō	prōvideō	vendō
ēgredior	Mars	quaerō	vereor
enim	metuō	quālis	vītō
eō	mīror	quantus	vīvus
excidō	morior	recipiō	volō
exeō	moror	redeō	Xerxēs

TABLES

OF

DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

NOUNS.

First Declension. — A-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. naut-a, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>sailors.</i>
G. naut-ae, <i>of a sailor.</i>	naut-ārum, <i>of sailors.</i>
D. naut-ae, <i>to or for a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>to or for sailors.</i>
A. naut-am, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ās, <i>sailors.</i>
V. naut-a, <i>O sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>O sailors.</i>
A. naut-ā, <i>with, by, from a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>with, by, from sailors.</i>

Second Declension: — O-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. serv-us	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
G. serv-ī	serv-ōrum	oppid-ī	oppid-ōrum
D. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-is
A. serv-um	serv-ōs	oppid-um	oppid-a
V. serv-e	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
A. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-īs

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
G.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	agr-ī	agr-ōrum	vir-ī	vir-ōrum
D.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs
A.	puer-um	puer-ōs	agr-um	agr-ōs	vir-um	vir-ōs
V.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
A.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs

Third Declension.

Liquid Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
G.	homin-is	homin-um	frātr-is	frātr-um
D.	homin-ī	homin-ibus	frātr-ī	frātr-ibus
A.	homin-em	homin-ēs	frātr-em	frātr-ēs
V.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
A.	homin-e	homin-ibus	frātr-e	frātr-ibus
N.	cōsul	cōsul-ēs	scrīptor	scrīptōr-ēs
G.	cōsul-is	cōsul-um	scrīptōr-is	scrīptōr-um
D.	cōsul-ī	cōsul-ibus	scrīptōr-ī	scrīptōr-ibus
A.	cōsul-em	cōsul-ēs	scrīptōr-em	scrīptōr-ēs
V.	cōsul	cōsul-ēs	scrīptor	scrīptōr-ēs
A.	cōsul-e	cōsul-ibus	scrīptōr-e	scrīptōr-ibus
N.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
G.	tempor-is	tempor-um	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
D.	tempor-ī	tempor-ibus	flūmin-ī	flūmin-ibus
A.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
V.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
A.	tempor-e	tempor-ibus	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
G. virtūt-is	virtūt-um	hiem-is	hiem-um
D. virtūt-ī	virtūt-ibus	hiem-ī	hiem-ibus
A. virtūt-em	virtūt-ēs	hiem-em	hiem-ēs
V. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
A. virtūt-e	virtūt-ibus	hiem-e	hiem-ibus
N. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
G. duc-is	duc-um	rēg-is	rēg-um
D. duc-ī	duc-ibus	rēg-ī	rēg-ibus
A. duc-em	duc-ēs	rēg-em	rēg-ēs
V. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
A. duc-e	duc-ibus	rēg-e	rēg-ibus
N. princeps	princip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
G. princip-is	princip-um	ped-is	ped-um
D. princip-ī	princip-ibus	ped-ī	ped-ibus
A. princip-em	princip-ēs	ped-em	ped-ēs
V. princeps	princip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
A. princip-e	princip-ibus	ped-e	ped-ibus

Stems in i.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
G. cīv-is	cīv-ium	host-is	host-ium
D. cīv-ī	cīv-ibus	host-ī	host-ibus
A. cīv-em	cīv-ēs, -īs	host-em	host-ēs, -īs
V. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
A. cīv-e	cīv-ibus	host-e	host-ibus

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
G.	noct-is	noct-ium	animāl-is	animāl-ium
D.	noct-ī	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus
A.	noct-em	noct-ēs, -is	animal	animāl-ia
V.	nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
A.	noct-e	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus

Fourth Declension. — U-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
G.	fruct-ūs	fruct-uum	corn-ūs	corn-uum
D.	fruct-uī, -ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus
A.	fruct-um	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
V.	fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
A.	fruct-ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus

Fifth Declension. — E-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
G.	di-eī	di-ērum	r-eī	r-ērum
D.	di-eī	di-ēbus	r-eī	r-ēbus
A.	di-em	di-ēs	r-em	r-ēs
V.	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
A.	di-ē	di-ēbus	r-ē	r-ēbus

Special Paradigms.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	dom-us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-i, di-i, dī
G.	dom-ūs	dom-uum, -ōrum	de-ī	de-ōrum, de-ūm
D.	dom-uī, -ō	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-is, di-is, d-is
A.	dom-um	dom-ōs, -ūs	de-um	de-ōs
V.	dom us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-ī, di-ī, dī
A.	dom-ō, -ū	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-is, di-is, d-is

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	senex	sen-ēs	iter	itiner-a
G.	sen-is	sen-um	itiner-is	itiner-um
D.	sen-ī	sen-ibus	itiner-ī	itiner-ibus
A.	sen-em	sen-ēs	iter	itiner-a
V.	senex	sen-ēs	iter	itiner-a
A.	sen-e	sen-ibus	itiner-e	itiner-ibus

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
G.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
D.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
A.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
V.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
A.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

SINGULAR.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
G.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
D.	miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
A.	miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
V.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
A.	miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō

PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
G. miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
D. miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
A. miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
V. miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
A. miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
tōt-us	tōt-a	tōt-um
tōt-īus	tōt-īus	tōt-īus
tōt-ī	tōt-ī	tōt-ī
tōt-um	tōt-am	tōt-um
tōt-ō	tōt-ā	tōt-ō

POSSESSIVE, SINGULAR OWNERSHIP.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	meī, -ae, -a
tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy, your</i> .	tuī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i> .	suī, -ae, -a

POSSESSIVE, PLURAL OWNERSHIP.

noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	nostrī, -ae, -a
vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .	vestrī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>their</i> .	suī, -ae, -a

Third Declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. sapiēns	sapiēns	sapiēnt-ēs	sapiēnt-ia
G. sapiēnt-is	sapiēnt-is	sapiēnt-ium	sapiēnt-ium
D. sapiēnt-ī	sapiēnt-ī	sapiēnt-ibus	sapiēnt-ibus
A. sapiēnt-em	sapiēns	sapiēnt-ēs	sapiēnt-ia
V. sapiēns	sapiēns	sapiēnt-ēs	sapiēnt-ia
A. sapiēnt-ī	sapiēnt-ī	sapiēnt-ibus	sapiēnt-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
G. fort-is	fort-is	fort-ium	fort-ium
D. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus
A. fort-em	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
V. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
A. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
G. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
D. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
A. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
A. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
vetus (gen. -eris), <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
senex (gen. senis), <i>aged</i> .	{ senior māior nātū }	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	{ iunior minor nātū }	minimus nātū

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i> .	exterior, <i>outer</i> .	{ extrēmus extimus } <i>outmost</i> .
inferus, <i>below</i> .	inferior, <i>lower</i> .	{ infimus īmus } <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, <i>following</i> .	posterior, <i>latter</i> .	{ postrēmus postumus } <i>last</i> .
superus, <i>above</i> .	superior, <i>higher</i> .	{ suprēmus summus } <i>highest</i> .
PREPOSITION.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> .	citerior, <i>hither</i> .	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
in, intrā, <i>within</i> .	interior, <i>inner</i> .	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
prae, prō, <i>before</i> .	prior, <i>former</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv.), <i>near</i> .	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus { <i>nearest</i> <i>next</i> .
ultrā (adv.), <i>beyond</i> .	ulterior, <i>farther</i> .	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .

Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
G. fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
D. fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
A. fortiōr-em	fortius	fortiōr-ēs, -īs	fortiōr-a
V. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
A. fortiōr-e, -ī	fortiōr-e, -ī	fortior-ibus	fortior-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. —	plūs	plūr-ēs	plūr-a
G. —	plūr-is	plūr-ium	plūr-ium
D. —	—	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus
A. —	plūs	plūr-ēs, -īs	plūr-a
A. —	plūr-e	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus

Numerals.

CARDINALS.

1. ūnus, -a, -um	28. duodētrīgintā
2. duo, duae, duo	29. ūndētrīgintā
3. trēs, tria	30. trīgintā
4. quattuor	40. quadrāgintā
5. quīnque	50. quīnquāgintā
6. sex	60. sexāgintā
7. septem	70. septuāgintā
8. octō	80. octōgintā
9. novem	90. nōnāgintā
10. decem	100. centum
11. ūndecim	101. centum ūnus
12. duodecim	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
13. tredecim	300. trecentī
14. quattuordecim	400. quadringentī
15. quīndecim	500. quīngentī
16. sēdecim	600. sexcentī
17. septendecim	700. septingentī
18. duodēvigintī	800. octingentī
19. ūndēvigintī	900. nōngentī
20. vīgintī	1,000. mille
21. { vīgintī ūnus	5,000. quīnque milia
{ ūnus et vīgintī	10,000. decem milia

100,000. centum milia

ORDINALS.

1st	prīmus, -a, -um	17th	septimus decimus
2d	secundus (<i>or</i> alter)	18th	duodēvīcēsīmus
3d	tertius	19th	ūndēvīcēsīmus
4th	quartus	20th	vīcēsīmus
5th	quīntus	21st	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus ūnus et vīcēsīmus
6th	sextus	22d	{ vīcēsīmus secundus alter et vīcēsīmus
7th	septimus	29th	ūndētrīcēsīmus
8th	octāvus	30th	trīcēsīmus
9th	nōnus	40th	quadrāgēsīmus
10th	decimus	100th	centēsīmus
11th	ūndecimus	101st	centēsīmus prīmus
12th	duodecimus	200th	ducentēsīmus
13th	tertius decimus	1000th	millēsīmus
14th	quartus decimus	2000th	bis millēsīmus
15th	quīntus decimus		
16th	sextus decimus		

Declension of Numerals.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
A.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs, duo	duās	duo
A.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	trēs	trīa	mille	mīlia
G.	trīum	trīum	mille	mīlium
D.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus
A.	trēs	trīa	mille	mīlia
A.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus

Pronouns.

	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.		THIRD PERSON.	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
G.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi	sibi
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
A.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

Demonstratives.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
A.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
A.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis
N.	is	ea	id	eī, ii	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
A.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	īdem	eadem	īdem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
A.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsi	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Relative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. alicūius	alicūius	alicūius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. alicuī	alicuī	alicuī	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
A. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
A. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
G. cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
A. quendam	quandam	quiddam
A. quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
A. quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
A. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.—Ā-Verbs.

amō, love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

INDICATIVE.

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.*

PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris or -re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris or -re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis or -re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus {	sum	amātī {	sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis		es		estis
amāvit	amāvērunt or -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus	{	eram	amātī	{	erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis			erās			erātis
amāverat	amāverant			erat			erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus	{	erō	amātī	{	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis			eris			eritis
amāverit	amāverint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris <i>or</i> -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris <i>or</i> -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	{	sim	amātī	{	simus
amāveris	amāveritis			sīs			sītis
amāverit	amāverint			sīt			sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	{	essem	amātī	{	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis			essēs			essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*amāre, *be thou loved.*amāte, *love ye.*amāminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*amātō, *he shall love.*amātor, *he shall be loved.*amātōte, *you shall love.*

—

amantō, *they shall love.*amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*amārī, *to be loved.*PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*amātus esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*amātum irī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*

PRES. —

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*GER.¹ amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*

PERF. —

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *loved, having been loved.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. —

—

G. amandī, *of loving.*

—

D. amandō, *for loving.*

—

A. amandum, *loving.*A. amātum, *to love.*A. amandō, *by loving.*A. amātū, *to love, to be loved.*¹ Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle*.

Second Conjugation. — *Ē-Verbs.***moneō, advise.**PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

<i>Active.</i>		INDICATIVE.	
<i>I advise, etc.</i>		PRESENT.	<i>Passive.</i> <i>I am advised, etc.</i>
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris <i>or</i> -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
<i>I was advising, etc.</i>		IMPERFECT.	<i>I was advised, etc.</i>
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris <i>or</i> -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
<i>I shall advise, etc.</i>		FUTURE.	<i>I shall be advised, etc.</i>
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis <i>or</i> -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
<i>I have advised, I advised, etc.</i>		PERFECT.	<i>I have been (was) advised, etc.</i>
monuī	monuimus	monitus {	sum {
monuistī	monuistis		es {
monuit	monuērunt <i>or</i> -re		est {
			sumus {
			estis {
			sunt {
<i>I had advised, etc.</i>		PLUPERFECT.	<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus {	eram {
monuerās	monuerātis		erās {
monuerat	monuerant		erat {
			erāmus {
			erātis {
			erant {

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	{	erō	moniti	{	erimus
monueris	monueritis			eris			eritis
monuerit	monuerint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{	sim	moniti	{	simus
monueris	monueritis			sīs			sītis
monuerit	monuerint			sīt			sint

PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus	{	essem	moniti	{	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis			essēs			essētis
monuisset	monuissent			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

*monē, advise thou.**monēre, be thou advised.**monēte, advise ye.**monēminī, be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

*monētō, thou shalt advise.**monētor, thou shalt be advised.**monētō, he shall advise.**monētor, he shall be advised.**monētōte, you shall advise.*

—

*monentō, they shall advise.**monentor, they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
FUT. monitūrus esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising.</i>	PRES. —
FUT. monitūrus, -a, um, <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. —	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>advised, having been advised.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. —	—
G. monendī, <i>of advising.</i>	—
D. monendō, <i>for advising.</i>	—
A. monendum, <i>advising.</i>	A. monitum, <i>to advise.</i>
A. monendō, <i>by advising.</i>	A. monitū, <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>

Third Conjugation.—E-Verbs.

regō, rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

INDICATIVE.

Active.

Passive.

PRESENT.

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, etc.

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

I was ruled, etc.

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris or -re	regēbāminī
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall rule, etc.

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

I shall be ruled, etc.

regar	regēmur
regēris or -re	regēminī
regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

I have ruled, etc.

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt or -re

I have been ruled, etc.

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled, etc.

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

I had been ruled, etc.

rēctus	{ eram	rēctī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have ruled, etc.

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

I shall have been ruled, etc.

rēctus	{ erō	rēctī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

regar	regāmur
regāris or -re	regāminī
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus {	sim	rēctī {	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus {	sīs	rēctī {	sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint	rēctus {	sit	rēctī {	sint

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissemus	rēctus {	essem	rēctī {	essēmus
rēxisse	rēxissetis	rēctus {	essēs	rēctī {	essētis
rēxisset	rēxisissent	rēctus {	esset	rēctī {	essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, <i>rule thou.</i>	regerē, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
regite, <i>rule ye.</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled.</i>

FUTURE.

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule.</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled.</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule.</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled.</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule.</i>	—
reguntō, <i>they shall rule.</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, <i>to rule.</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled.</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
FUT. rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	rēctum irī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēs, -entis, <i>ruling.</i>	PRES. —
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule.</i>	GER. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. —	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled.</i>

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N. —	—	—	—
G. regendī, <i>of ruling.</i>	—	—	—
D. regendō, <i>for ruling.</i>	—	—	—
A. regendum, <i>ruling.</i>	A. rēctum, <i>to rule.</i>		
A. regendō, <i>by ruling.</i>	A. rēctū, <i>to rule, to be ruled.</i>		

Third Conjugation.—Verbs in -iō.

capiō, take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.*

Active.		INDICATIVE MOOD.		Passive.	
<i>I take, etc.</i>		PRESENT.		<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>		
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis or -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>		
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>		
<i>I was taking, etc.</i>		IMPERFECT.		<i>I was taken, etc.</i>	
<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>		
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāris or -re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>		
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>		
<i>I shall take, etc.</i>		FUTURE.		<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>	
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>		
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris or -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>		
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capientur</i>	<i>capientur</i>		
<i>cēpī, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.</i>		PERFECT.		<i>captus sum, es, est, etc.</i>	
<i>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</i>		PLUPERFECT.		<i>captus eram, erās, erat, etc.</i>	
<i>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</i>		FUTURE PERFECT.		<i>captus erō, eris, erit, etc.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris *or-re*, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris *or-re*, -erētur, etc.

PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sis, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, <i>take thou.</i>	capere, <i>be thou taken.</i>
capite, <i>take ye.</i>	capimini, <i>be ye taken.</i>
FUT. capitō, <i>thou shalt take,</i> etc.	capitor, <i>thou shalt be taken,</i> etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, <i>to take.</i>	capī, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF. cēpisse, <i>to have taken.</i>	captus esse, <i>to have been taken.</i>
FUT. captūrus esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to take.</i>	captum iri, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>taken.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, <i>taking.</i>	PRES. —
FUT. captūrus, <i>about to take.</i>	GER. capiendus, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF. —	PERF. captus, <i>having been taken.</i>

GERUND.

G. capiendī, *of taking,*
etc.

SUPINE.

A. captum, *to take.*
A. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

Fourth Conjugation.—Ī-Verbs.

audiō, hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītus.

INDICATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audis	auditis	audiris or -re	audīmini
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audies	audiētis	audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audīvi	audivimus	audītus {	sum	auditi {	sumus
audivisti	audivistis		es		estis
audivit	audivērunt or -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	{ eram erās erat	audītī	{ erāmus erātis erant
audīverās	audīverātis				
audīverat	audīverant				

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	{ erō eris erit	audītī	{ erimus eritis erunt
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audīam	audīāmus	audīar	audīāmur
audīās	audīātis	audīāris <i>or</i> -re	audīāminī
audiat	audiant	audīātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris <i>or</i> -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	{ sim sis sit	audītī	{ sīmus sītis sint
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	{ essem essēs esset	audītī	{ essēmus essētis essent
audīvisēs	audīvissetis				
audīvisset	audīvissent				

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*audīre, *be thou heard.*audīte, *hear ye.*audimini, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*audītō, *he shall hear.*auditor, *he shall be heard.*audītōte, *ye shall hear.*

—

audiuntō, *they shall hear.*audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*audiri, *to be heard.*PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.*FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*audītum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*

PRES. —

FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

PERF. —

PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. —

—

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*

—

D. audiendō, *for hearing.*

—

A. audiendum, *hearing.*A. auditum, *to hear.*A. audiendō, *by hearing.*A. auditū, *to hear, to be heard.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

sum, *be.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fui, futūrus.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

sum, *I am.*
 es, *thou art.*
 est, *he (she, it) is.*

PLURAL.

sumus, *we are.*
 estis, *you are.*
 sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*
 erās, *thou wast.*
 erat, *he was.*

erāmus, *we were.*
 erātis, *you were.*
 erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*
 eris, *thou wilt be.*
 erit, *he will be.*

erimus, *we shall be.*
 eritis, *you will be.*
 erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fui, *I have been, was.*
 fuisti, *thou hast been, wast.*
 fuit, *he has been, was.*

fuimus, *we have been, were.*
 fuistis, *you have been, were.*
 { fuerunt or
 fuere, *they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.*
 fuerās, *thou hadst been.*
 fuerat, *he had been.*

fuerāmus, *we had been.*
 fuerātis, *you had been.*
 fuerant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*
 fueris, *thou will have been.*
 fuerit, *he will have been.*

fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
 fueritis, *you will have been.*
 fuerint, *they will have been.*

PRESENT.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim	simus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
FUTURE.	
estō, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
estō, <i>he shall be.</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>
INFINITIVE.	
PRES. esse, <i>to be.</i>	PARTICIPLE.
PERF. fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>	
FUT. futūrus esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be.</i>

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. poterō	poterīmus		
PERF. potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP. potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE.	
PRES. posse	PERF. potuisse

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, benefit.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prosimus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP. prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT. prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF. prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP. prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P. prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.

INDICATIVE.

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vis	nōn vīs	māvis
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. —	nōlī	—
	nōlīte	
FUT. —	nōlītō, etc.	—

INFINITIVE.

PRES. velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. volēns	nōlēns	—
--------------	--------	---

eō, ire, ivi (ii), itūrus, go.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (supplies passive to faciō), *make, be made, become.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES. eō	imus	fiō	fīmus
is	itis	fīs	fītis
it	eunt	fīt	fīunt
IMP. ībam		fīēbam	
FUT. ībō		fīam	
PERF. īi		factus sum	
PLUP. ieram		factus eram	
F. P. ierō		factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.			
PRES.	eam	fiam	
IMP.	īrem	fierem	
PERF.	ierim	factus sim	
PLUP.	iissem	factus essem	
IMPERATIVE.			
PRES.	I īte	fi	fite
FUT.	{ itō	_____	_____
	{ itō	_____	_____
INFINITIVE.			
PRES.	īre	fieri	
PERF.	isse	factus esse	
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum iri	
PARTICIPLES.			
PRES.	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	PRES.	_____
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	GER.	faciendus
PERF.	_____	PERF.	factus
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N.	_____		_____
G.	eundi		_____
D.	eundō		_____
A.	eundum	A.	itum
A.	eundō	A.	itū

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, endure.

INDICATIVE.					
<i>Active.</i>			<i>Passive.</i>		
PRES.	{	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
		fers	fertis	ferris <i>or -re</i>	ferimini
		fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP.		ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.		feram		ferar	
PERF.		tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.		tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.		tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
PRES.	fer	ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	—
FUT.	lāturus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	—	PERF.	lātus

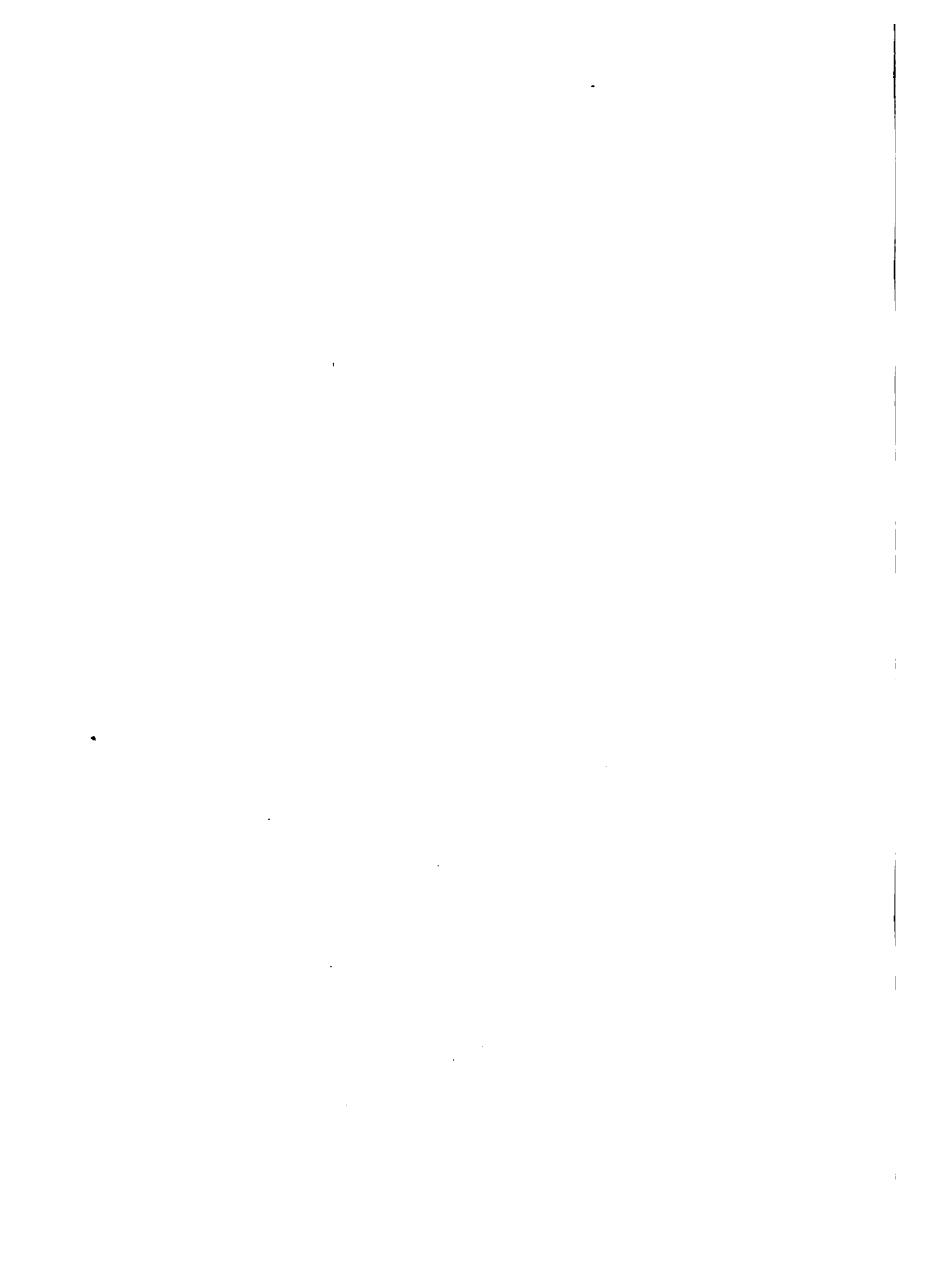
GERUND.

SUPINE.

—	—
G. ferendī	—
D. ferendō	—
A. ferendum	A. lātum
A. ferendō	A. lātū

TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Abl.	= Ablative.	lit.	= literally.
abs.	= absolute.	m., masc.	= masculine.
Acc.	= Accusative.	neut.	= neuter.
act.	= active.	Nom.	= Nominative.
adj.	= adjective.	n.	= note.
adv.	= adverb.	part.	= participle.
adv. phr.	= adverbial phrase.	part.	= partitive.
app.	= apposition.	pass.	= passive.
art.	= article.	per.	= person.
comp.	= comparative.	Perf., Pf.	= Perfect.
conj.	= conjunction.	pl.	= plural.
conj.	= conjugation.	Plup.	= Pluperfect.
cor.	= correlative.	pos.	= positive.
Dat.	= Dative.	post-posit.	= post-positive.
dec.	= declension.	pred.	= predicate.
def.	= defective.	prep.	= preposition.
der.	= derivative.	Pres.	= Present.
Eng.	= English.	princ.	= principal.
etc.	= and so forth.	pron.	= pronoun.
f., fem.	= feminine.	R.	= Root.
fut.	= future.	rel.	= relative.
Gen.	= Genitive.	s., sing.	= singular.
Imp.	= Imperfect.	subj.	= subject.
Ind.	= Indicative.	subst.	= substantive.
ind. disc.	= indirect discourse.	superl.	= superlative.
indef.	= indefinite.	Voc.	= Vocative.
Inf.	= Infinitive.	vocab.	= vocabulary.
inter.	= interrogative.	w.	= with.



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

—♦—

NOTE. — Numerals are omitted from this vocabulary. They can be found by referring to paragraphs 179-183.

A.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by*.
absum, -esse, -fui, *to be absent, be distant*.

abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, *to abuse*.
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to approach*.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to receive, accept*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager*.
aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle*.

ācriter, adv., *vigorously, fiercely*.
ācritūdō, -inis, f., *sharpness, keenness*.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near*.

admirābilis, -e, *wonderful, admirable*.

admiror, -ārī, -ātus, *to wonder at, admire*.

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be near, be present*.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *a youth*.

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival*.

aedificium, -ī, n. *building*.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build, construct*.

Aeduus, -ī, m., *an Haeduan*.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, feeble*.

Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt*.

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air*.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer*.

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *to bring to*.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*.

ager, agrī, m., *field*.

aggredior, -edī, -essus sum, *to attack, go against*.

āgmen, -inis, n., *column, army*.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *to lead, drive, act, do*.

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer*.

āla, -ae, f., *wing*.

albus, -a, -um, *white*.

Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander*.

Alexandrēa, -ae, f., *Alexandria*.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, *some, any, some one, any one*.

alius, -a, -um, *other, another*.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bind to*.

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps*.

alter, -era, -erum, *the other (of two)*.

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth*.

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.
 ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to walk*.
 amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.
 amicus, -i, m., *friend*.
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to love*.
 amor, -ōris, m., *love, affection*.
 Anaxagorās, -ae, m., *Anaxagoras*.
 ancilla, -ae, f., *maid-servant*.
 anguis, -is, m., *snake*.
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
 animal, -ālis, n., *animal*.
 animus, -i, m., *mind, spirit, courage*.
 annus, -ī, m., *year*.
 ante, prep. with acc.; also adv., *before*.
 antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient, old*.
 Apollo, -inis, m., *Apollo*.
 Aprīlis, -is, m., *April*.
 apud, prep. with acc., *among, near, with*.
 aqua, -ae, f., *water*.
 aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*.
 āra, -ae, f., *altar*.
 arātrum, -ī, n., *plow*.
 arbor, arboris, f., *tree*.
 argentum, -ī, n., *silver*.
 Ariovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*.
 arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms, weapons*.
 armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to arm*.
 arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to plow*.
 ars, artis, f., *art*.
 artifex, -icis, m., *artificer*.
 artus, -ūs, m., *joint*.
 arx, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress*.
 asinus, -ī, m., *ass*.
 Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.

Athēniēnsis, -is, m., *an Athenian*.
 attentus, -a, -um, *attentive*.
 auctōritās, -ātis, f., *authority, influence*.
 auctus, -ūs, m., *increase, growth*.
 auctus, -a, -um, *increased, great, abundant*.
 audācia, -ae, f., *boldness*.
 audāx, -ācis, *bold, audacious, daring*.
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *to dare, venture*.
 audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to hear*.
 augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus, *to increase, enlarge*.
 Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus*.
 aureus, -a, -um, *golden*.
 auris, -is, f., *ear*.
 aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.
 auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid*.
 avārus, -a, -um, *avaricious*.
 avis, -is, f., *bird*.

B.

Bacchus, -ī, m., *Bacchus*.
 barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*.
 beātus, -a, -um, *happy, blessed*.
 Belgā, -ae, m., *a Belgian*.
 bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to make war, carry on war*.
 bellum, -ī, n., *war*.
 bene, adv., *well*.
 benignus, -a, -um, *kind, gracious*.
 bēstia, -ae, f., *beast, animal*.
 bis, adv., *twice*.
 bonus, -a, -um, *good*.
 brevis, -e, *short, brief*.
 Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

C.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

calidus, -a, -um, *warm*.

candidus, -a, -um, *candid*.

canō, -ere, cecini, cantus, *to sing*.

cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to sing, play, write poetry*.

cantus, -ūs, m., *song*.

capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus, *to take, capture*.

captivus, -i, m., *captive, prisoner*.

caput, -itis, n., *head*.

cārē, adv., *dearly*.

carmen, -inis, n., *song, poem*.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, *Carthaginian*.

Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m., *Carthaginians*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*.

castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to chastise*.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *a camp*.

Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, condition*.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *celebrated*.

celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to celebrate*.

celer, -eris, -ere, *swift*.

celeritās, -tātis, f., *speed*.

celeriter, adv., *quickly*.

Celta, -ae, m., *a Celt*.

cēna, -ae, f., *meal*.

certāmen, -inis, n., *strife, contest*.

certē, adv., *surely, certainly*.

certus, -a, -um, *sure, certain*.

cibus, -i, m., *food*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*.

Cincinnātus, -i, m., *Cincinnatus*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.
citerior, -ius, comp. adj., *nearer, hither*.

cīvilis, -e, *civil*.

cīvis, -is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen*.

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state*.

clāmōr, -ōris, m., *noise, clamor*.

clārē, adv., *clearly, loudly*.

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, loud; distinguished*.

classis, -is, f., *fleet*.

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, *to shut, close*.

Cleopātra, -ae, f., *Cleopatra*.

coepi, coepisse, *began, have begun*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to think*.

cognōmen, -inis, n., *name, surname*.

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nitus, *to learn*.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to exhort*.

collis, -is, m., *hill*.

color, -ōris, m., *color*.

columba, -ae, f., *dove*.

comes, -itis, m., *companion*.

commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies*.

commūnis, -e, *common*.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change*.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *to fill up, complete*.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to found, build*.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *to bring together, collect*.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to finish; exhaust*.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fisis sum, *to trust*.

cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to establish, confirm.*

congregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to assemble.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f., conspiracy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to conspire.*

cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, *to endeavor, attempt.*

cōnsentiō, -īre, -sensi, -sensus, *to agree.*

constantia, -ae, *f., constancy.*

cōnsul, -is, *m., consul.*

contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, *to hurry, hasten; contend.*

contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*

contineō, -ēre, -ui, —, *to confine, hold in check.*

contrā, *prep. with acc., against, opposite.*

conventus, -ūs, *m., assembly.*

cōpia, -ae, *f., plenty.*

cōpiae, -arum, *f. pl., troops, forces.*

Corinthus, -i, *f., Corinth.*

Cornēlia, -ae, *f., Cornelia.*

cornū, -ūs, *n., horn; wing of an army.*

corōna, -ae, *f., crown.*

corpus, -oris, *n., body.*

cotidiē, *adv., daily.*

Crassus, -i, *m., Crassus.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *to believe.*

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to burn, cremate.*

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to make, elect.*

crux, *crucis, f., cross.*

culpa, -ae, *f., blame, fault.*

cultus, -ūs, *m., culture.*

cum, *prep. with abl., with.*

cum, *conj., when; because, since.*

cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, *to desire, wish.*

cūr, *interrog. adv., why?*

cūra, -ae, *f., care, regard.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to care for, attend to.*

currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus, *to run.*

custodiō, -īre, -ivi, -itus, *to guard.*

cymba, -ae, *f., boat.*

D.

dē, *prep. with abl., from, about, concerning.*

dea, -ae, *f., goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, *to owe; ought, must.*

December, -bris, *m., December.*

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, *to decree.*

Decimus Brutus, -i, *m., Decimus Brutus.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to declare.*

dēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *to give up, surrender.*

defatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to weary out, tire, exhaust.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to fail.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to please, delight.*

dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *to destroy, overthrow.*

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to deliberate, consider.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to select, choose.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to depart.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to despair.*

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, *to be wanting, fail.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana.*

dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictus, *to say, speak, tell.*

diēs, -ēī, m., *day, time.*

difficilis, -e, *difficult.*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.*

diligēns, -entis, *diligent, careful.*

diligenter, adv., *with care, diligently.*

diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence.*

dimidium, -ī, n., *half.*

discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *to learn.*

dissimilis, -e, *dissimilar.*

distribuō, -ere, uī, -ūtus, *to distribute.*

diū, adv., *long, for a long time.*

dividō, -ere, -isī, -isus, *to divide.*

dō, dāre, dedī, dātus, *to give, render, grant.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus, *to teach, instruct, show.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief.*

dolus, -ī, m., *cunning, deceit, fraud.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master.*

domus, -ūs (ī), f., *house, home.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to present.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present.*

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to sleep.*

ducō, -ere, -xī, ductus, *to lead, guide.*

dulcis, -e, *sweet.*

dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E.

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*

ēducō, -ere, -xī, -ductus, *to lead forth.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to educate.*

effēmīnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to weaken, enervate.*

ego, meī, I.

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to go forth, depart.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, *excellent.*

ēlegantia, -ae, f., *elegance.*

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*

enim, for.

eō, ire, īvī, itus, *to go.*

Ephesus, -ī, f., *Ephesus.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*

eques, -itis, m., *horseman.*

equester, -tris, -tre, *pertaining to cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to err.*

et, conj., *and.*

Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe.*

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go out, depart.*

excidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *to fall from.*

excidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, *to cut down.*

exemplum, -i, n., *example*.

exeō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *to go forth or out*.

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to think, consider*.

expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to storm, capture*.

expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to await, look for*.

exterior, -ius, *exterior*.

F.

fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable*.

facile, adv., *easily*.

facilis, -e, *easy*.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *to make, do, perform*.

factiō, -ōnis, f., *faction*.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger*.

familia, -ae, f., *family, household*.

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, *to favor*.

Februārius, -ī, m., *February*.

fēliciter, adv., *happily*.

fēlix, -icis, *happy*.

Fēlix, -icis, m., *Felix*.

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*.

fera, -ae, f., *wild beast*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, carry, endure*.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron*.

fertilis, -e, *fertile*.

fidē, adv., *faithfully*.

fidēlis, -e, *trusty, faithful*.

fidēlīter, *faithfully*.

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, confidence*.

fidus, -a, -um, *faithful*.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

fillius, -ī, m., *son*.

finis, -is, m., *end, limit, boundary*.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, pass. of faciō, *be made, become*.

fīrmus, -a, -um, *firm, strong*.

flōreō, -ēre, flōruī, —, *to bloom, flourish*.

flōs, -ōris, m., *flower*.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.

fluō, -ere, -xī, -xus, *to flow*.

fluvius, -ī, m., *stream*.

folium, -ī, n., *leaf*.

fortis, -e, *brave, valiant*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery, fortitude*.

fōrtūna, -ae, f., *fortune*.

forum, -ī, n., *forum*.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.

fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud*.

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*.

frigus, -oris, n., *cold*.

fructus, -ūs, m., *fruit*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *corn, grain*.

fruor, frui, fructus sum, *to enjoy*.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitus, *to flee, escape*.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to put to flight*.

funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger*.

fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *to perform*.

G.

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.
 gallīna, -ae, f., *hen*.
 Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.
 gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *to rejoice, be glad*.
 gaudium, -ī, n., *joy*.
 Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*.
 gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*.
 genū, -ūs, n., *knee*.
 Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.
 Germānus, -a, -um, *German*.
 Germānus, -ī, m., *a German*.
 gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *to bear, carry on (war)*.
 gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, *to beget, bring forth*.
 gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame*.
 gracilis, -e, *graceful, slender*.
 Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*.
 Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek*.
 grāmen, -inis, n., *grass*.
 grātia, -ae, f., *favor, esteem, influence*.
 grātus, -a, -um, *grateful, agreeable, acceptable*.
 gravis, -e, *heavy, severe*.
 graviter, adv., *heavily, severely*.

H.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to have, hold, regard*.
 habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to dwell, inhabit*.
 Hannibal, -is, m., *Hannibal*.
 Hasdrubal, -is, m., *Hasdrubal*.
 hasta, -ae, f., *spear*.

Helvētia, -ae, f., *Helvetia*.
 Helvētius, -ī, m., *an Helvetian*.
 herba, -ae, f., *plant, herb*.
 hiberna, -ōrum, n., *winter-quarters*.
 Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland*.
 hic, haec, hōc, *this*.
 hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to winter*.
 hiems, -emis, f., *winter*.
 Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*.
 historia, -ae, f., *history*.
 Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer*.
 homō, -inis, m., *man, human being*.
 honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem*.
 hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.
 Horātius Cocles, -ī, -is, m., *Horatius Cocles*.
 hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to exhort, encourage, urge*.
 hortus, -ī, m., *garden*.
 hostis, -is, m., *enemy (public)*.
 hūmānus, -a, -um, *human*.
 humilis, -e, *low, humble*.
 humus, -ī, f., *ground*.

I.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to lie*.
 iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *to throw, hurl*.
 Iānuārius, -ī, m., *January*.
 ibi, adv., *there, at that place*.
 idem, eadem, idem, *the same*.
 idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable*.
 ignāvia, -ae, f., *cowardice*.
 ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, *to pardon, forgive*.
 ille, illa, illud, *that*.

immortālis, -e, *immortal*.
impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*;
 (pl.) *heavy baggage*.
imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander*,
general, chief.
imperitus, -a, -um, *unskilled, ignorant*.
imperium, -ī, n., *command, authority, power, empire*.
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, violence*.
impius, -a, -um, *impious*.
impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *to place on, impose*.
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring in, import*.
improbus, -a, -um, *wicked*.
imprūdēns, -tis, *imprudent*.
in, prep. with acc. and abl., *into, in, against*.
incendium, -ī, n., *conflagration*.
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to begin, take up*.
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to rouse, incite, spur on*.
incola, -ae, m., *inhabitant*.
incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, *to dwell, inhabit*.
industria, -ae, f., *industry*.
ineō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, *to go into, enter*.
infelix, -icis, *unhappy*.
inferus, -a, -um, *below*.
ingēns, -entis, *huge, vast*.
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to hurl into or against*.
inimicus, -ī, m., *enemy (personal)*.
initium, -ī, n., *beginning*.
iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong*.
innocēns, -entis, *innocent*.

insidiae, -ārum, *ambush, plot, stratagem*.
instruō, -ere, -xī, -ctus, *to arrange, draw up*.
insula, -ae, f., *island*.
integritās, -ātis, f., *integrity*.
intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to perceive, understand*.
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, during*.
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off, obstruct*.
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to kill*.
intersum, -esse, -fui, —, *to be among*.
intrā, prep. with acc., also adv., *within*.
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to invent, find, discover*.
ipse, -a, -um, *self (app.)*.
īra, -ae, f., *anger*.
is, ea, id, *that, he, she, it*.
iste, -a, -ud, *that (near you)*.
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy*.
iter, itineris, n., *way, journey, march*.
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *to order, bid, command*.
iūdex, -icis, m., *judge*.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to judge, decide*.
Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*.
Iūlius, -ī, m., *Julius*.
Iūnius, -ī, m., *June*.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*.
Iūra, -ae, m., *Jura (a mountain chain)*.

iussus, -ūs, *command*.
 iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice*.
 iūstus, -a, -um, *just, right*.
 iuvenis, -is, m., *a young man*.
 iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to aid, help, assist*.

L.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus*.
 labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to labor, work, toil*.
 laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, *to injure, hurt*.
 laetē, adv., *gladly*.
 laetitia, -ae, f., *gladness*.
 laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to rejoice, exult*.
 laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful*.
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone*.
 lātē, adv., *widely, far*.
 latebra, -ae, f., *hiding place*.
 lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to lie hidden*.
 lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*.
 laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to praise, commend*.
 laus, -dis, f., *praise*.
 lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy, legation*.
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, legate, lieutenant*.
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to choose, select, read*.
 leō, -ōnis, m., *lion*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 libenter, adv., *willingly*.
 liber, -era, -erum, *free*.
 liber, -brī, m., *book*.
 liberalitās, -tātis, f., *liberality*.

liberī, -ōrum, m., *children*.
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to free, release, liberate*.
 libertās, -tātis, f., *liberty, freedom*.
 littera, -ae, f., *letter (alphabet); (pl.) epistle, document*.
 locus, -ī, m., *place, situation*.
 longus, -a, -um, *long, distant*.
 loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, tell, say*.
 lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *to mourn*.
 lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.
 lupus, -ī, m., *wolf*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

M.

maestus, -a, -um, *sad*.
 magister, -trī, m., *master, teacher*.
 magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy, magistrate*.
 māgnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size*.
 māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large*.
 Māius, -ī, m., *May*.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, *to choose rather, prefer*.
 malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil*.
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *to stay, remain, abide*.
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band*.
 Marcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*.
 mare, -is, n., *sea*.
 maritimus, -a, -um, *maritime*.
 Mars, -tis, m., *Mars*.
 Martius, -ī, m., *March*.
 māter, -tris, f., *mother*.
 mātrōna, -ae, f., *matron*.
 māximē, adv., *especially*.

medicina, -ae, f., *medicine*.
medius, -a, -um, *middle*.
memoria, -ae, f., *memory*.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind, reason, judgment*.
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.
mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury*.
merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon*.
metuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to fear*.
metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread*.
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*.
miles, -itis, m., *soldier*.
militia, -ae, f., *soldiery, military service*.
Miltiadēs, -is, m., *Miltiades*.
Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva*.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to admire, wonder at*.
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unfortunate*.
miserē, adv., *unfortunately*.
mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, *to send*.
modestus, -a, -um, *modest*.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to advise, warn*.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill*.
morbus, -ī, m., *disease*.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *to die*.
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to delay, tarry*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*.
mortālis, -e, *mortal*.
mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom* ; (pl.) *character*.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move, excite*.
moz, adv., *presently, soon*.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.
multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude*.
multō, adv., *much* ; **multum**, adv., *much*.
multus, -a, -um, *much*.
mūnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to reward, remunerate*.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-īlī), -ītus, *to fortify*.
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall, rampart*.
mūs, mūris, m. and f., *mouse*.
mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to change*.

N.

nam, *for*.
nārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to tell*.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *to be born, arise*.
nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation, tribe*.
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, birth*.
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to sail, navigate*.
nāvis, -is, f., *ship*.
nē, conj., *that not, lest, so that not*.
nē, adv., *not*.
-ne, enclitic, *sign of question*.
necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to kill*.
nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *not to know*.
neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither (of two)*.
niger, -gra, -grum, *black, dark*.
nihil, n. indecl., *nothing* ; as adv., *not at all*.
Nīlus, -ī, m., *Nile*.
nisi (conj.), *unless, if not*.
nix, nivis, f., *snow*.
nōbilis, -e, *noble, famous*.
nōbilit̃er, adv., *nobly*.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to harm, injure.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*

nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnne, interrog. particle expecting answer yes.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, *some.*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our.*

nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*

November, -bris, m., *November.*

novus, -a, -um, *new, unusual.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūllus, -a, -um, *no.*

num, interrog. particle expecting the answer no.

numerus, -i, m., *number.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nunquam, adv., *never.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to announce.*

nūntius, -i, m., *messenger, message.*

O.

obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege.*

obsistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitus, *to oppose, resist, withstand.*

obsum, -esse, -fui, *to oppose.*

occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus, *to cut down, kill.*

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to seize, occupy.*

Octōber, -bris, m., *October.*

oculus, -i, m., *eye, sight.*

offendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, *to offend, displease.*

ōlim, adv., *once, once upon a time.*

Olympus, -i, m., *Olympus.*

ōmnis, -e, *all, every.*

onerārius, -a, -um, *freighted.*

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden.*

oppidānus, -i, m., *townsman.*

oppidum, -i, n., *town (walled).*

opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus, *to overwhelm.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to besiege.*

opulentus, -a, -um, *rich, opulent.*

opus, -eris, n., *work, fortification.*

ōra, -ae, f., *coast.*

orāculum, -i, n., *oracle.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *oration, speech.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator.*

orior, -iri, ortus sum, *to rise, arise, begin, spring from.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to adorn, decorate.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*

P.

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to pacify, subdue.*

Padus, -i, m., *Padus.*

parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus, *to spare.*

parēns, -entis, m., *parent.*

pāreō, -ēre, pārui, paritus, *to obey.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *to bring forth.*

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to prepare, provide, acquire, get.*

pars, partis, f., *part, share, portion, direction.*

partiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *to divide.*

partus, -ūs, m., *birth.*

parvus, -a, -um, *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, m., *pace.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

patientia, -ae, f., *patience.*

patria, -ae, f., *native land, country.*

paucī, -ōrum, m., *few.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*

pedes, -itis, m., *foot-soldier.*

peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry.*

penna, -ae, f., *feather, wing.*

pēnsūm, -ī, n., *task, lesson.*

per, prep. with acc., *through.*

periculōsus, -a, -um, *perilous, dangerous.*

periculum, -ī, n., *danger, risk, peril.*

perītus, -a, -um, *skilful, experienced.*

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *destruction, evil.*

perniciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive, pernicious.*

Persa, -ae, m., *a Persian.*

persuādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, *persuade, convince.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to hold through, extend.*

pervenio, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come to, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

petō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, *to seek, ask.*

piger, -gra, -grum, *lazy.*

pirāta, -ae, m., *pirate.*

pius, -a, -um, *pious.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to please.*

plāniciēs, -ēī, f., *level ground, plain.*

plānitia, -ae, f., *plain.*

plānitīēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*

Platō, -ōnis, m., *Plato.*

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup.*

Poenus, -ī, m., *a Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum, *to promise, offer.*

Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *to place, put.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

pōpulus, -ī, f., *poplar tree.*

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to carry, bear.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor.*

possum, posse, potuī, *to be able.*

post, prep. with acc., and adv., *after.*

postea, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, *following.*

potēns, -entis, *powerful.*

potentia, -ae, f., *power.*

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, ability, opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, -itus sum, *to get possession of, obtain.*

praeceptor, -ōris, m., *preceptor, teacher.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty.*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to set over, put in command of.*

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to send before.*

praemium, -ī, n., *reward*.
 praesidium, -ī, n., *defense, garrison*.
 praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *surpass, excel*.
 praesum, -esse, -fuī, *to be in command of*.
 pretiōsus, -a, -um, *valuable, precious*.
 primō, adv., *at first*.
 primus, -a, -um, *first, foremost, principal*.
 prior, -us, *former, earlier*.
 princeps, -cipis, *first, chief; as noun, chief, leader*.
 prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of, for, instead of*.
 probus, -a, -um, *upright*.
 prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to advance, proceed*.
 prōditor, -ōris, m., *traitor*.
 proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat*.
 proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *to set out, go, march*.
 prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *to advance, proceed*.
 prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to hold back, check, restrain*.
 prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw forth or forward*.
 Promētheus, -ēī, m., *Prometheus*.
 prope, adv. and prep. with acc., *near*.
 properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hasten*.
 propter, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
 prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *to benefit*.

prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visus, *to provide for, care for*.
 prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.
 prūdēns, -entis, *prudent*.
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public, of the state*.
 pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, modesty*.
 puella, -ae, f., *girl*.
 puer, -ī, m., *boy; (pl.) boys, children*.
 pūgna, -ae, f., *battle, fight, combat*.
 pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight, contend*.
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, handsome*.
 Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*.
 pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *to punish*.
 pūrus, -a, -um, *pure*.
 putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to think, suppose, judge*.

Q.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, -situs, *to seek, ask, inquire*.
 quālis, -e, *of what kind*.
 quam, adv., *than*.
 quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much*.
 -que, enclitic conj., *and*.
 quī, quae, quod, *who, which, what, that*.
 quia, conj., *because*.
 quidam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain one, some one*.
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, *any you please*.
 quis, quae, quid, *who, what?*

quispiam, quae¹piam, quidpiam, *any one, anybody.*

quisquam, quae¹quam, quidquam, *any, any one.*

quisque, quae¹que, quidque, *each, each one.*

quivis, quae¹vis, quidvis, *any one you please.*

R.

rapīna, -ae, f., *plunder.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take back, recover.*

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to refresh.*

redeō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *to go back, return.*

rēgina, -ae, f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *reign, kingdom.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *to rule, govern, direct.*

relinquō, -ere, -liqūī, -lictus, *to leave behind, abandon.*

remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, *to remain.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to renew.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring back word, report.*

reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertus, *to find, discover, learn.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring back.*

rēs, rei, f., *thing, affair, circumstance.*

rēs frūmentāria, *provisions, corn-supply.*

resistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *to withstand, resist, oppose.*

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, *republic, state.*

revertor, -ī, -sus sum, *to turn back, return.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call back.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *Rhone.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river).*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman; as noun, a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus.*

rosa, -ae, f., *rose.*

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor.*

rūpēs, -is, f., *rock.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back.*

rūs, rūris, n., *country.*

rūsticus, -a, -um, *pertaining to the country, rustic, rural.*

rūsticus, -ī, m., *farmer.*

S.

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.*

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., *priest, priestess.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

salūbris, -e, *healthful, salubrious.*

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, security.*

sānctus, -a, -um, *sacred.*

sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom.*

sarcina, -ae, f., *pack, burden.*

satis, adv., *enough*.

scelus, -eris, n., *crime*.

scientia, -ae, f., *science, knowledge*.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to know, understand*.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*.

scribō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *to write*.

scriptor, -ōris, m., *writer*.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

sed, conj., *but*.

semper, adv., *always, ever*.

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.

senex, senis, m., *old man*; adj., *old*.

sepulcrum, -ī, n., *sepulcher, grave*.

sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum, *to follow, pursue*.

sermō, -ōnis, m., *sermon, speech, conversation*.

serviō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to be a slave, to serve*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to save, preserve, keep*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*.

sī, conj., *if*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

signifer, -ī, m., *standard-bearer*.

sīgnum, -ī, n., *mark, sign, signal, standard*.

silva, -ae, f., *forest*.

similis, -e, *like, similar*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left, unfavorable*.

socius, -ī, m., *companion, ally*.

Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.

Solon, -ōnis, m., *Solon*.

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*.

spēs, -ēī, f., *hope, expectation*.

statim, adv., *immediately*.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

stella, -ae, f., *star*.

stō, stāre, stetī, status, *to stand*.

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

subitus, -a, -um, *sudden*.

succumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitus, *to succumb*.

succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus, *to aid, succor*.

sui, gen. refl. pronoun 3d pers., *of himself, herself, etc.*

Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla*.

sum, esse, fui, *to be*.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *to take, assume, claim*.

superbus, -a, -um, *proud, haughty*.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to overcome, conquer*.

superus, -a, -um, *above*.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving*.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion, distrust*.

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *to sustain, bear, endure*.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their*.

T.

tālis, -e, *such, of such kind*.

tam, adv., *so*.

tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless*.

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much*.

tempestās, -tātis, f., *tempest, weather, time.*

templum, -i, n., *temple.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season, occasion.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *to hold, keep, occupy.*

tener, -era, -erum, *tender.*

terra, -ae, f., *land, country.*

terror, -ōris, m., *terror.*

Tiberis, -is, m., *Tiber.*

Ticinus, -i, m.; *Ticinus.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to fear, be afraid of.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, alarm.*

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to bear, endure.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *all, whole, entire.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead across.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *to draw.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*

trānseō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, *to go across, cross.*

trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to carry across.*

tribus, -ūs, f., *tribe.*

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy.*

tū, tuī, *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your.*

U.

ubi, adv., *where, when.*

ubique, adv., *everywhere.*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*

ulterior, -ius, *farther, more distant.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, only, alone.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

urgeō, -ēre, ursi, —, *to press, crowd, oppress.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, practice, service, advantage.*

ut, conj., *that, in order that, so that.*

uter, -tra, -trum, *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two).*

ūtilis, -e, *useful, serviceable.*

utinam, adv., *would that, O that!*

ūtōr, -ī, ūsus sum, *to use, employ, adopt, enjoy.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

ūva, -ae, f., *grape.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to be strong, be well.*

validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy.*

vāllum, -i, n., *wall, rampart.*

varius, -a, -um, *various.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to lay waste, devastate.*

vectigal, -ālis, n., *tax, revenue.*

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to sell.*

venēnum, -i, n., *poison.*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come.*

verbum, -i, n., *word; (pl.) words, language.*

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *to fear, dread.*

Vergilius, -ī, m., *Vergil*.
vērītās, -ātis, f., *truth*.
verū, -ūs, n., *a spit*.
vērus, -a, -um, *true*.
vescor, -ī, —, *to feed upon, eat*.
vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.
vestitus, -ūs, m., *clothing*.
vetus, -eris, *old, ancient*.
via, -ae, f., *road, way, march*.
vicinus, -ī, m., *neighbor*.
victor, -ōris, m., *conqueror, victor*.
victōria, -ae, f., *victory*.
videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, *to see, behold*.
vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch (a fourth part of the night)*.
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *to bind, tie*.
vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, *to conquer, subdue*.
vīnea, -ae, f., *besieging shed*.
vinum, -ī, n., *wine*.
violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to violate*.

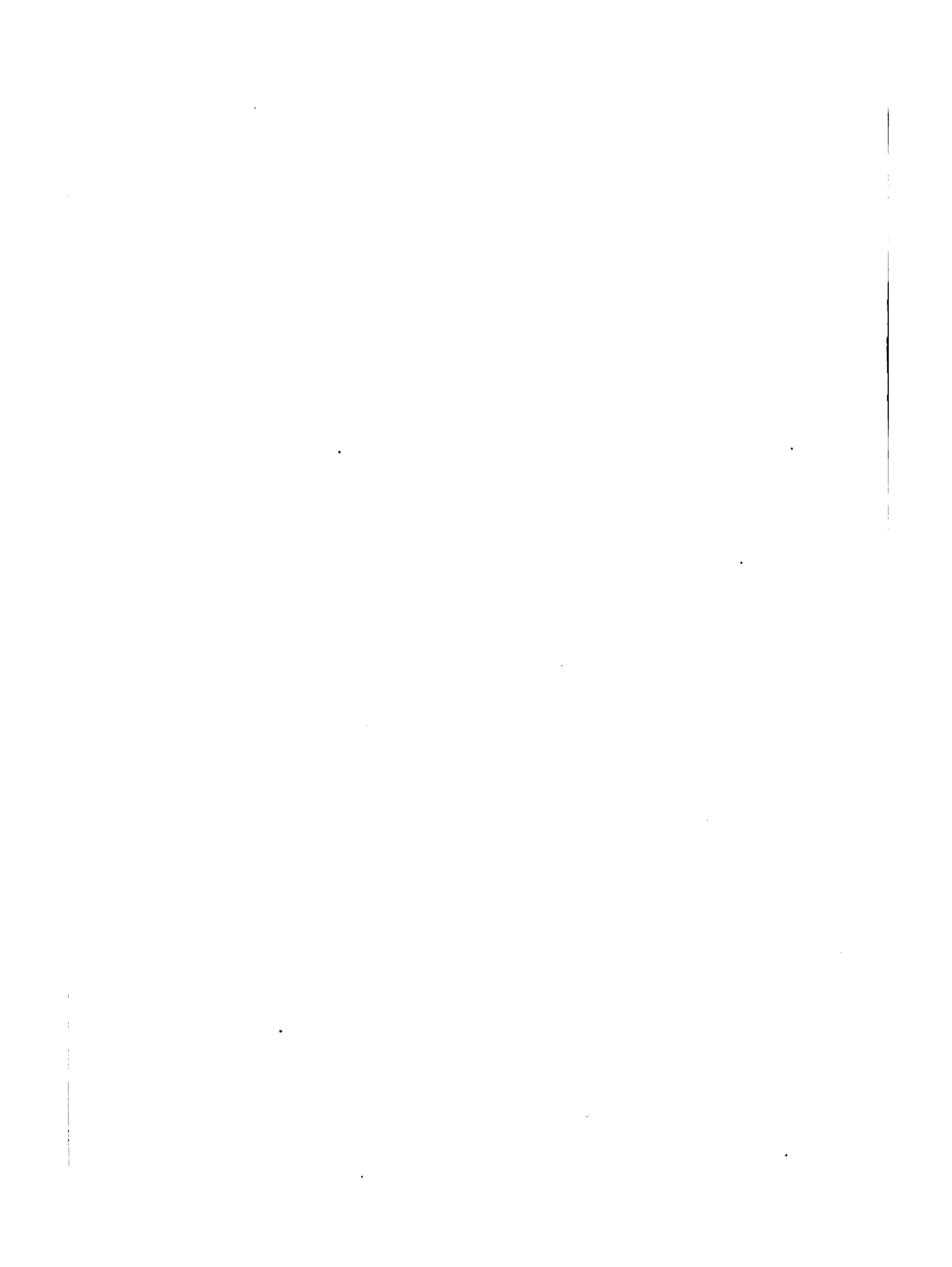
vir, virī, m., *man, hero*.
viridis, -e, *green*.
virtūs, -tūtis, f., *courage, bravery, virtue*.
vīta, -ae, f., *life*.
vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to shun*.
vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to blame*.
vīvus, -a, -um, *alive*.
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to call, summon*.
volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to fly*.
volō, velle, voluī, *to wish, desire*.
voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure*.
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, sound, word*.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to wound*.
vulpēs, -is, f., *fox*.

X.

Xerxēs, -is, m., *Xerxes*.

Z.

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama*.



ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

—•••—

NOTE.—Numerals are omitted from this vocabulary. They can be found by referring to paragraphs 179 and 183.

A.

abandon , relinquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictus.	although , cum.
about , de, <i>with abl.</i>	always , semper.
abundance , copia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	ambassador , legatus, -i, <i>m.</i>
across , trans, <i>with acc.</i>	ambush , insidiae, -arum, <i>f.</i>
admirable , admirabilis, -e.	among , inter, apud, <i>with acc.</i>
adorn , orno, -are, -avi, -atus.	ancient , antiquus, -a, -um.
advance , progredior, -gredi, -gressus sum.	and , et, -que.
advise , moneo, -ere, -ui, -itus.	anger , ira, -ae, <i>f.</i>
Africa , Africa, -ae, <i>f.</i>	animal , animal, -alis, <i>n.</i>
after , post, <i>with acc.</i>	another , alius, -a, -um.
afterwards , postea, <i>adv.</i>	arm , armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
against , in, <i>with acc.</i>	arms , arma, -ōrum, <i>n.</i>
aid , auxilium, -i, <i>n.</i>	army , exercitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
aid , iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.	arrive , adveniō, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
air , aer, aeris, <i>m., acc.</i> aera.	arrow , sagitta, -ae, <i>f.</i>
Alexander , Alexander, -drī, <i>m.</i>	art , ars, artis, <i>f.</i>
all , omnis, -e.	Asia , Asia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
ally , socius, -ī, <i>m.</i>	ask , quaero, -ere, -sivī, -sītus.
alone , solus, -a, -um; unus, -a, -um.	ass , asinus, -i, <i>m.</i>
Alps , Alpēs, -ium, <i>f.</i>	Athens , Athēnae, -arum, <i>f.</i>
altar , ara, -ae, <i>f.</i>	attack , oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
	aggredior, -di, -gressus sum.
	author , scriptor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
	authority , auctoritās, -tātis, <i>f.</i>
	avoid , vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

B.

Bacchus, Bacchus, -ī, *m.*
bad, malus, -a, -um.
badly, male.
baggage, sarcina, -ae, *f.*
band, manus, -ūs, *m.*
bank, ripa, -ae, *f.*
battle, pūgna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -i, *n.*
battle-line, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*; āgmen, -minis, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fui.
be able, possum, posse, potui.
be absent, absum, abesse, afui.
beast, bēstia, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
be born, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.
because, quod, quia.
beg, petō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
Belgian, Belga, -ae, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui.
be present, adsum, adesse, affui.
besiege, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
besieging shed, vīnea, -ae, *f.*
betray, prōditor, -ōris, *m.*
bind, adligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
bird, avis, -is, *f.*
(birth), by birth, nātū.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
boat, cymba, -ae, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
boldly, audācter.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*

book, liber, -brī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtus, -tūtis; fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
bring back, reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
but, sed.
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*
by means of, ablative of instrument without prep.

C.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*
captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -e.
Catiline, Catilina, -ae, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cause, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cavalry-man, eques, -itis, *m.*

celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
certain, certus, -a, -um.
certainly, certē.
chastise, castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
chief, princeps, -ipis, *m*.
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m*.; puerī,
 -ōrum, *m*.

choose (rather), mālō, mälle, mālui.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m*.
Cincinnatus, Cincinnātus, -ī, *m*.
citadel, arx, arcis, *f*.
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
clamor, clāmōr, -ōris, *m*.
cold, frigidus, -a, -um.
cold, frigus, -oris, *n*.
collect, cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
color, color, -ōris, *m*.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m*.
comrade, comes, -itis, *m*.
concerning, de, *with abl*.
confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f*.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus;
 superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
conspiracy, coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f*.
conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
constancy, cōstantia, -ae, *f*.
consul, cōsul, -is, *m*.
contain, contineō, -ēre, -tenuī,
 -tentus.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f*.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f*.
country, patria, -ae; terra, -ae, *f*.;
 rūš, rūris, *n*.
create, creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
crime, scelus, -leris, *n*.
cross, transeō, -īre, -ivī, -itus.

cross, crux, crucis, *f*.
crown, corōna, -ae, *f*.
culture, cultūra, *f*.; cultus, -ūs, *m*.
cup, pōculum, -ī, *m*.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m*.

D.

daily, cotidiē.
danger, periculum, -ī, *n*.
daring, audāx, -ācis.
daring, audācia, -ae, *f*.
Darius, Dārius, -ī, *m*.
daughter, filia, -ae, *f*.
day, diēs, diēi, *m*. and *f*.
daybreak, prima lūx.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
dearly, cārē.
death, mors, mortis, *f*.
decorate, ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
declare, dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvi,
 dēcrētus.
defeat, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus;
 superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus.
delay, moror, -ārī, morātus sum.
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m*.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
 sus; demigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
desire, cupiō, -ēre, -ivī, -itus; volō,
 velle, volui.
destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
Diana, Diāna, -ae, *f*.
die, morior, -ī, mortuus sum.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f*.

diligent, diligēns, -gentis.
diligently, diligenter.
direction, pars, partis, *f*.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f*.
divide, dividō, -ere, -visi, -vīsus.
divine, divīnus, -a, -um.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
dove, columba, -ae, *f*.
draw, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus.
draw up, instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
dwelt, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultus.

E.

eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
ear, auris, -is, *f*.
earth, terra, -ae, *f*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
educate, educō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, *m*.
elegance, elegantia, -ae, *f*.
elephant, elephantus, -ī, *m*.; elephās, -phantis, *m*.
embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f*.
emperor, imperātor, -ōris, *m*.
endure, tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
enemy, hostis, -is; inimicus, -ī, *m*.
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum.
err, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
especially, māximē.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f*.
ever, umquam.
everybody, quisque.
example, exemplum, -ī, *n*.
excel, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stītus.

excellent, ēgregius, -a, -um.
exhaust, dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
exhort, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum;
 cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
eye, oculus, -ī, *m*.

F.

faction, factiō, -ōnis, *f*.
faith, fidēs, -ēī, *f*.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter, fidē.
fame, glōria, -ae, *f*.
family, familia, -ae, *f*.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, lātē, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.
father, pater, -tris, *m*.
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f*.
fault, culpa, -ae, *f*.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus.
fear, timor, -ōris, *m*.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
February, Februārius, -ī, *m*.
fertile, fertilis, -e.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m*.
fight, pūgna, -ae, *f*.
fight, pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus;
 reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
fire, ignis, -is, *m*.
firmness, cōstantia, -ae, *f*.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus.
fleet, classis, -is, *f*.

flight, fuga, -ae, *f*.
 flourish, flōreō, -ēre, -uī.
 flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus.
 flower, flōs, flōris, *m*.
 fly, volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
 foe, hostis, -is; inimīcus, -ī, *m*.
 follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
 following, posterus, -a, -um.
 food, cibus, ī, *m*.
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m*.
 foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m*.
 for, *dat. without prep.*; prō, *with abl.*
 for (*conj.*), nam, enim.
 for a long time, diū.
 forces, cōpia, -ārum, *f*.
 forest, silva, -ae, *f*.
 forgive, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus.
 form (*battle line*), īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
 former, ille, illa, illud.
 form plan, ineō cōnsilium.
 for sake of, causā.
 fortification, vāllum, -ī; opus, operis, *n*.
 fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
 found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
 fox, vulpēs, -is, *f*.
 fraud, fraus, fraudis, *f*.
 free, liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
 free, liber, -era, -erum.
 friend, amīcus, -ī, *m*.
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f*.
 frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, territus.
 from, ē, ex, ā, ab, *with abl.*

G.

gain, reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m*.
 garden, hortus, -ī, *m*.
 gate, porta, -ae, *f*.
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f*.
 general, imperātor, -ōris, *m*.
 German, Germānus, -a, -um.
 German, Germānus, -ī, *m*.
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f*.
 gift, dōnum, -ī, *n*.
 girl, puella, -ae, *f*.
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
 glad, laetus, -a, -um.
 gladness, laetitia, -ae, *f*.
 go, eō, īre, īvī, ītus.
 go away, abeō, -īre, -īī, -ītus.
 god, deus, -ī, *m*.
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f*.
 go into, ineō, -īre, -īī, -ītus.
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n*.
 good, bonus, -a, -um.
 goods, bona, -ōrum, *n*.
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n*.
 grape, ūva, -ae, *f*.
 grass, grāmen, -inis, *n*.
 grave, sepulchrum, -ī, *n*.
 great, māgnus, -a, -um.
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f*.
 Greek, Graecus, -ī, *m*.
 green, viridis, -e.
 grief, dolor, -ōris, *m*.
 growth, auctus, -ūs, *m*.
 guard, praesidium, -ī, *n*.

H.

Haeduan, Aeduus, -ī, *m*.
 half, dimidium, -ī, *n*.
 hand, manus, -ūs, *m*.
 Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m*.

happy, *fēlix*, -cis; *beātus*, -a, -um.
harbor, *portus*, -ūs, *m*.
hasten, *properō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus;
 contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus.
have, *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
he, *is*, *hic*, *ille*.
hear, *audiō*, -ire, -īvi, -itus.
help, *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvi*, *iūtus*.
Helvetia, *Helvētia*, -ae, *f*.
Helvetian, *Helvētius*, -ī, *m*.
hen, *gallīna*, -ae, *f*.
high, *altus*, -a, -um.
hill, *collis*, -is, *m*.
his, *suus*, -a, -um.
history, *historia*, -ae, *f*.
hither, *citerior*, -ius.
hold, *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, *tentus*.
holy, *sacer*, -cra, -crum.
home, *domus*, -ūs, *f*.
Homer, *Homērus*, -ī, *m*.
hope, *spēs*, *spei*, *f*.
Horatius Cocles, *Horātius Cocles*,
 -ī, -itis, *m*.
horn, *cornū*, -ūs, *n*.
horse, *equus*, -ī, *m*.
horseman, *eques*, *equitis*, *m*.
hostage, *obses*, -idis, *m*.
hour, *hōra*, -ae, *f*.
house, *domus*, -ūs, *f*.
huge, *ingēns*, -entis.
human, *hūmānus*, -a, -um.

I.

I, *ego*, *mei*.
if, *si*.
if not, *nisi*.
illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um.
immediately, *statim*.

immortal, *immortālis*, -e.
in, *in*.
into, *in*.
increase, *augeō*, -ēre, *auxi*, *auctus*.
industry, *industria*, -ae, *f*.
infantry, *peditātus*, -ūs, *m*.
inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, *m*.
injure, *laedō*, -ere, *laesi*, *laesus*;
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
innocent, *innocēns*, -entis.
in order that, *ut*.
inquire, *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesivī*,
 quaesitus.
integrity, *integritās*, -ātis, *f*.
Ireland, *Hibernia*, -ae, *f*.
island, *īnsula*, -ae, *f*.
it, *id*, *hōc*, *illud*.
Italy, *ītalīa*, -ae, *f*.

J.

January, *īanuārius*, -ī, *m*.
journey, *iter*, *itineris*, *n*.
joy, *gaudium*, -ī, *n*.
judge, *iūdex*, -icis, *m*.
Julia, *Iūlia*, -ae, *f*.
Julius, *Iūlius*, -ī, *m*.
July, *Iūlius*, -ī, *m*.
Jupiter, *Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, *m*.
Jura, *Iūra*, -ae, *m*.
just, *iūstus*, -a, -um.
justice, *iūstitia*, -ae, *f*.

K.

keen, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
keep away, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī,
 -itus.
kill, *necō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; *inter-*
 ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

kind, *benignus*, -a, -um.
king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, *m*.
knee, *genū*, -ūs, *n*.
knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, *f*.
known, *nōtus*, -a, -um.

L.

labor, *labor*, -ōris, *m*.
labor, *labōrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
lack, *dēsum*, -esse, -fuī; *dēficiō*,
 -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
lady, *mātrōna*, -ae, *f*.
land, *terra*, -ae, *f*.
language, *sermō*, -ōnis, *m*.
large, *māgnus*, -a, -um.
last, *ultimus*, -a, -um.
latter, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*.
law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, *f*.
lay waste, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
laziness, *pigritia*, -ae, *f*.
lead, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*.
leader, *dux*, *ducis*, *m*.
leaf, *folium*, -ī, *n*.
learn, *discō*, -ere, *didicī*.
left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum.
legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, *f*.
lest, *nē*.
letter, *littera*, -ae; *epistula*, -ae; *f*.
liberality, *liberalitās*, -ātis, *f*.
liberate, *liberō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
liberty, *libertās*, -ātis, *f*.
lie, *iaceō*, -ēre, -uī.
lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, *m*.
life, *vita*, -ae, *f*.
light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, *f*.
lion, *leō*, *leōnis*, *m*.
little, *parvus*, -a, -um.
live, *habitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

long, *longus*, -a, -um.
love, *amō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
love, *amor*, -ōris, *m*.
low, *humilis*, -e.

M.

maid-servant, *ancilla*, -ae, *f*.
make, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.
man, *homō*, -inis; *vir*, -ī; *m*.
many, *multī*, -ae, -a.
march, *iter*, *itineris*, *n*.; *via*, -ae, *f*.
March, *Martius*, -ī, *m*.
Mars, *Mars*, *Martis*, *m*.
master, *dominus*, -ī; *magister*,
 -trī; *m*.
meal, *cēna*, -ae, *f*.
Mercury, *Mercurius*, -ī, *m*.
messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, *m*.
mile, *mille passuum*.
Miltiades, *Miltiadēs*, -is, *m*.
mind, *mēns*, *mentis*, *f*.; *animus*,
 -ī, *m*.
Minerva, *Minerva*, -ae, *f*.
modest, *modestus*, -a, -um.
money, *pecūnia*, -ae, *f*.
month, *mēnsis*, -is, *m*.
mortal, *mortālis*, -e.
mother, *māter*, -tris, *f*.
mourn, *lūgeō*, -ēre, *lūxī*, *lūctus*.
mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *m*.
move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*.
much, *multus*, -a, -um.
multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f*.

N.

name, *nōmen*, -inis, *n*.
narrow, *angustus*, -a, -um.
narrow way, *angustiae*, -ārum, *f*.

nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

near, ad, *with acc.*; prope, *adv.*,
and *prep. with acc.*

new, novus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

Nile, Nilus, -i, *m.*

none, nūllus, -a, -um.

not, nōn, nē.

nothing, nihil (indeclinable).

now, nunc.

number, numerus, -i, *m.*

O.

O, ō.

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

occupy, occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

of, *genitive without prep.*

offend, offendō, -ere, -i, -fēnsus.

often, saepe.

oh that, utinam.

old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

old man, senex, senis, *m.*

Olympus, Olympus, -i, *m.*

on, in, *with abl. and acc.*

on account of, causā.

once upon a time, ōlim.

open, aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus.

oppose, obsum, -esse, -fuī.

oracle, ōrāculum, -i, *n.*

oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*

order, iussus, -ūs, *m.*

order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, dēbitus.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

out from, ē, ex, *with abl.*

overcome, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

P.

pacify, pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

parent, parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

peasant, rūsticus, -i, *m.*

people, populus, -i, *m.*

perform, fungor, -gī, fūctus sum.

perseverance, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*

Persian, Persa, -ae, *m.*

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus.

physician, medicus, -i, *m.*

pirate, pīrāta, -ae, *m.*

place, locus, -i, *m.*

place, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.

plain, plānitēs, -ēi, *f.*

Plato, Platō, -ōnis, *m.*

please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*

plow, arātrum, -i, *n.*

plow, arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

Po, Padus, -i, *m.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

poor, miser, -era, -erum.

poplar, pōpulus, -i, *f.*

power, potentia, -ae, *f.*

powerful, potēns, -entis.

praise, laus, laudis, *f.*

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui.

prepare, parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

pride, superbia, -ae, *f.*

priest, sacerdos, -ōtis, *m.*

Prometheus, Promētheus, -eī, *m.*

promise, polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum.

protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
provisions, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
Punic, Pūnicus, -a, -um.
punish, pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
put in command, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
put to death, necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
put to flight, fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

Q.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

R.

rapid, celer, -eris, -ere.
rather, *comp. degree*.
read, legō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
refresh, rēcreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
reign, rēgnū, -ī, *n.*
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus sum.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānus.
report, renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, -ei, -ae, *f.*
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī.
return, redeō, -ire, -iī, -itus.
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
reward, remūneror, -ārī, remūnerātus sum.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*

rich, opulentus, -a, -um.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum.
river, fluvius, ī, *m.*; flūmen, -inis, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Roman, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rout, fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.

S.

sad, maestus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sail, nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus.
science, scientia, -ae, *f.*
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, -ivī, -itus.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
selection, dēlēctus, -ūs, *m.*
sell, vëndō, -ere, -didī, -itus.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
send forward, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
sermon, sermō, -ōnis, *m.*
serve, serviō, -ire, -ivī, -itus.
set out, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
severe, gravis, -e.

severely, graviter.
shame, pudor, -ōris, *m*.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter.
sharpness, ācritūdō, -inis, *f*.
she, ea, haec, illa.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n*.
ship, nāvis, -is, *f*.
short, brevis, -e.
shrewd, ācer, ācris, ācre.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f*.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
silver, argentum, -ī, *n*.
since, cum.
sing, canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus;
 cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
skiff, cymba, -ae, *f*.
skilful, peritus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -ī, *m*.
sleep, somnus, -ī, *m*.
sleep, dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
slender, gracilis, -e.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
snow, nix, nivis, *f*.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, *m*.
soldier, miles, -itis, *m*.
some one, aliquis, -qua, -quid.
some . . . other, aliī . . . aliī.
son, filius, -ī, *m*.
song, carmen, -inis, *n*.; cantus,
 -ūs, *m*.
soon, mox.
sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m*.
so that, ut.
soul, animus, -ī, *m*.
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f*.
speech, sermō, -ōnis, *m*.

speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f*.
standard, signum, -ī, *n*.
standard-bearer, signifer, -ī, *m*.
star, stella, -ae, *f*.
state, civitās, -ātis, *f*.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m*.
story, fābula, -ae, *f*.
stream, fluvius, -ī, *m*.
strife, certāmen, -inis, *n*.
strong, validus, -a, -um.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
subdue, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus;
 pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
successfully, fēliciter.
succor, succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cur-
 sus.
suddenly, subitō.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f*.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m*.
supremacy, imperium, -ī, *n*.
surrender, dēdō, -ere, dēdidī,
 -itus.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f*.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
swift, celer, -eris, -ere.
swiftly, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritās, -ātis, *f*.
sword, glādius, -ī, *m*.

T.

table, mēsa, -ae, *f*.
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
take by storm, expūgnō, -āre,
 -āvi, -ātus.
task, pēsum, -ī, *n*.
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.

teacher, praeceptor, -ōris; magister, -tri; *m.*

tell, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus; nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

temple, templum, -i, *n.*

tender, tener, -era, -erum.

territory, rīnēs, -ium, *m.*

than, quam.

thanks, grātia, -ae, *f.*

thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
that, ut.

that, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.

their, suus, -a, -um.

there, ibi.

thing, rēs, rei, *f.*

think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

tie to, alligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, ad, *with acc.*; *dative without prep.*

toil, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

too, *comp. degree.*

top, summus, -a, -um.

town, oppidum, -i, *n.*

townsman, oppidānus, -i, *m.*

transport, trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

treachery, insidiae, -ārum; dolus, -i, *m.*

tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*

tribe, tribus, -ūs, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

truth, vērītās, -ātis, *f.*

try, tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

twice, bis.

U.

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.

unhappy, infēlix, -icis.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, -e.

unrighteous, improbus, -a, -um.

upright, probus, -a, -um.

urge on, incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

use, ūtor, -i, ūsus sum.

useful, ūtilis, -e.

V.

Vergil, Vergilius, -i, *m.*

very, *super. degree*; ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

Victoria, Victōria, -ae, *f.*

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W.

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.

wall, mūrus, -i, *m.*

war, bellum, -i, *n.*

warm, calidus, -a, -um.

watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

well, bene.

what, quid; quis, quae, quod.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum.

white, albus, -a, -um.

who, quis, quae, quid; quī, quae, quod.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

wholesome, salūbris, -e.

why, cūr.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*

win, reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

wine, vinum, -i, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum,

n.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiēs, -entis.

wish, volō, velle, voluī; cupiō,
-ere, -ivī, -itus.

withdraw, dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi,
-ātus; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
sus.

within, in, *with abl.*

wolf, lupus, -i, *m.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*

wonder, miror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

word, verbum, -i, *n.*

work, opus, operis, *n.*

worthy, dignus, -a, -um.

would that, utinam.

wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scrip-
tus.

writer, scriptor, -ōris, *m.*

Y.

year, annus, -i, *m.*

yield, gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus.

you, tū, tuī; vōs, vestrum.

young, iuvenis, -e.

young man, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*;

iuventūs, -tūtis, *f.*

A New Beginners' Greek Book.

By I. F. Frisbee, Ph.D.

This new Beginners' Greek Book is modeled from the standpoint of the *learner*. The pupil is required to *think out* everything for himself.

1. Its paradigms contain only the *most common words* of Xenophon's Anabasis. In their selection preference has been regularly given to *root words*.

2. Its sentences for the exposition of the syntax are taken intact from the Anabasis, and are expressed in the familiar language of the student. Those sentences with inflectional forms are accompanied by brief critical observations, especially suited to young pupils.

3. Its vocabulary contains a special list of the most common words of the Anabasis.

4. Its formation of words deals with the most common words of the pupil's vocabulary.

5. Its inflectional forms are classified according to their natural relations; for example—the vowel declensions are treated together, and the verb is developed with its three voices in the order of those forms most common in Greek.

There are *many other features* besides these which we think will appeal to you.

Those who have used the book in the class room, write us, that—"for *logical arrangement* and *scientific treatment* of the fundamental principles of Greek it has no equal." The lessons are so arranged that even the dullest pupils can make *rapid advancement*. Would you be interested to see a copy of this book? *Price, \$1.25.*

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers,

4 Cooper Institute,

New York City.

Shortest Road to Cæsar

By E. T. Jeffers

Principal of York Collegiate Institute, York, Pa.

The "Shortest Road to Cæsar" does not offer itself as an easy road. Those who love ease will reach neither Cæsar nor excellence. The student is here shown how he may reach Cæsar "itinere magno."

The volume consists of two parts: The first, a beginner's Latin book; the last, the text and vocabulary of the second book of Cæsar's Gallic War.

The plan includes the following special points:

(1) The size of the book is reduced by referring to the grammar for rules and forms, instead of reproducing them.

(2) A small number of words is used, only about three hundred.

(3) The words are, with few exceptions, those found in the first six chapters of the second book of Cæsar.

(4) The phrases and sentences are largely from the same chapters.

(5) Only the leading rules of syntax are required or illustrated.

(6) In the vocabularies, generally, but one meaning is given to each Latin word.

The advantages discovered after a year's experiment are:

(1) In general, a saving of time without loss of thoroughness of preparation for reading.

(2) The student is not confused by finding in the grammar a paradigm or a form of rule different from what he learned in his beginner's book.

(3) He learns no word for which he does not find use in his first attempts at reading.

(4) By frequent use of the same set of words and idioms, he forms the habit of giving instantly the English equivalent of a Latin word or phrase.

(5) The last part is added to supply all the student needs for the study of the language for one year.

(6) The memory is not overtaxed in the effort to retain many meanings for each word, and the judgment is trained in modifying the given meaning to adapt it to new connections.

The book is particularly suited to High Schools and Preparatory Schools. Price, 75 cents.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-6-12-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City

This series contains the only two-part Greek Lexicon.

Dictionaries

Classic Series

Especially planned and carefully produced to meet the requirements of students and teachers in colleges, high schools and academies. Modern scholarship, modern typography, modern arrangement. Beautifully legible, clear type. Durably bound in half morocco in a style particularly attractive. Size 8x5½ inches.

German-English-English-German. 1112 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

French-English-English-French. 1122 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Italian-English-English-Italian. 1187 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Latin-English-English-Latin. 941 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Greek-English-English-Greek. 1056 pages.

Price \$2.00; This is the *only* Greek Lexicon containing *both* Greek-English and English-Greek parts in one volume. Heretofore, a good Greek-English Lexicon, *separate*, has cost *as much or more* than this two-part Lexicon.

The English-Greek Dictionary,

being the Second Part of the above, bound separately, *but published at \$1.00.*

New-Testament Lexicon.

Greek-English. An entirely new work embodying notable improvements upon all similar works. Handy-volume size. Price, \$1.00.

Dealing as we do exclusively in School and College Books, we have discovered a wide demand from Teachers and the Student Public for a *series* of dictionaries, uniform in size, up to the times in point of contents, authoritative while modern as regards scholarship, instantly accessible in respect to arrangement, of best quality as to typography and paper, and in a binding at once elegant and durable. *That the volumes in this series are the best in all these respects, is attested by their adoption and continued use by hundreds of the influential colleges and preparatory schools of this country and Canada.*

Hinds & Noble, Publishers

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City

In the First Greek Lessons the author has drawn largely from the Bible for illustrative sentences, so that after going through the Lessons the student will have little difficulty in reading the New Testament in the Greek.

Brooks' Classics

Historia Sacra, with 1st Latin Lessons. Revised, with *Vocabulary*. Price 50 cents. This justly popular volume, besides the *Epitome Historiæ Sacræ*, the Notes, and the *Lexicon*, contains 100 pages of elementary Latin Lessons so arranged as to form a practical course in Latin for the beginner, making it practicable for the teacher, without recourse to any other book, to carry the pupil quickly and in easy steps, over the ground preparatory to a profitable reading of the *Epitome Historiæ Sacræ*. Price 50 cents.

First Lessons in Greek, with *Lexicon*. Revised Edition. Prepared on the same plan as the author's First Latin Lessons. Tables giving derivations of the parts of speech. Tables showing the formation of the tenses. Price 50 cents.

Virgil's *Æneid*, with *Lexicon*. Illustrated and revised Edition. Notes, Critical, Historical and Mythological. Metrical Index and Map, and numerous engravings of Antique Statues, Arms, Gems, Coins and Medals. Also Questions for Examinations. Price reduced to \$1.50.

SAYS DR. SHELTON MACKENZIE:—"It is the most beautiful edition of Virgil's *Æneid* yet published. As an illustrated school book it has never been even approached."

Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, with *Lexicon*. Illustrated and Revised Edition. Expurgated and adapted for Mixed Classes. Elucidated by an Analysis and Explanation of each Table. With English Notes, Historical, Mythological and Critical, and Questions for Examinations. Price reduced to \$1.50.

SAYS DR. NEWELL:—"It bears the impress alike of the accurate scholar and the experienced teacher. He has added a body of explanatory notes, which for fullness, variety and appropriateness, will compare with any similar work, and gain by the comparison."

Hinds & Noble, Publishers

4 Cooper Institute

New York City

1

2

3

4

5

6

7



YB 36248

562495

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

